







DUKE UNIVERSITY

---

LIBRARY

---

The Glenn Negley Collection  
of Utopian Literature



W. C. West  
22nd Oct 1942

Brickland. Agnes

Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2010 with funding from  
Duke University Libraries

# JOURNEY

TO THE

WORLD UNDER GROUND;

BEING THE

*Subterraneous Travels*

OF

NIELS KLIM.

1741

---

FROM THE LATIN OF

LEWIS HOLBERG.

---

*LONDON:*

PUBLISHED BY THOMAS NORTH,  
64, PATERNOSTER-ROW.

---

1828.

---

Printed by G. Duckworth, 76, Fleet Street.

---

UTOPIA  
RBR  
H723J0

THE  
TRANSLATOR'S PREFACE.

---

THIS Work, while it amuses, does not fail to instruct; as it comprises, with much light and pleasant matter, a complete system of ethics. The Translator of Lewis Holberg's Life of himself, recently published in Hunt and Clarke's Series of Autobiography, prefaces it thus :—" Holberg is justly regarded by the Danes as the creator of their modern school of literature. His productions are but little known in this country, and still less in the more southern parts of Europe ; but in the North of Europe, there are few names which are held in greater esteem. He devoted his whole life to literature, and acquired, in his own country, a distinguished

## THE TRANSLATOR'S PREFACE.

reputation as a satirist, a dramatic writer, a national historian, and as an expounder of the principles of public law. His *Journey to the World under Ground* is an amusing and instructive production."

Holberg was created a baron by the King of Denmark in 1747, and died in 1754, leaving the principal part of the property he had accumulated to the Academy of Knights at Soroe.

# CONTENTS.

---

	Page
Apologetical Preface .....	v
CHAP. I.	
The Author's Descent into the Subterraneous Regions. .	1
CHAP. II.	
The Author's Arrival among the Inhabitants upon the Planet <i>Nazar</i> .....	16
CHAP. III.	
Description of the City of <i>Keba</i> .....	38
CHAP. IV.	
The Prince's Court in <i>Potu</i> .....	60
CHAP. V.	
On the State of the Country of <i>Potu</i> , and the People's Way of Thinking .....	82
CHAP. VI.	
On the Religion of the <i>Potuites</i> .....	90
CHAP. VII.	
The Constitution of <i>Potu</i> .....	101

	Page
CHAP. VIII.	
On the Schools in <i>Potu</i> ...	124
CHAP. IX.	
Travels round the Planet <i>Nazar</i> .	137
CHAP. X.	
Voyage to the Firmament...	229
CHAP. XI.	
Voyage to the Regions of Prodigies	274
CHAP. XII.	
The Author's Arrival at <i>Quama</i>	308
CHAP. XIII.	
Beginning of the <i>Fifth Monarchy</i>	320
CHAP. XIV.	
The Author is elected <i>Monarch</i> in the Subterraneous Regions	363
CHAP. XV.	
A sudden Change of Fortune	385
CHAP. XVI.	
The Author's Return to his Native Country, and End of the <i>Fifth Monarchy</i>	401
ABELIN'S APPENDIX	418



## APOLOGETICAL PREFACE.

---

PETER KLIM AND ANDREW KLIM,

SONS OF THOMAS KLIM, AND GRANDSONS OF

KLIM THE GREAT,

TO

THE COURTEOUS READER.

IT having come to our knowledge, that the truth of this history has, by some persons, been called into question, and that the publishers of the "*Subterraneous Travels*," on that account, have, in several places, fallen into ill repute; we have deemed it advisable, to prevent any false charge in future, to prefix to this new

edition, an attestation signed by men whose sincerity and veracity elevate them far above the orb of all suspicion; and whose evidence entirely secures the publishers against every invidious attempt at contradiction. The two first subscribing witnesses were contemporaries of our hero; and the others lived near about the same time: all being universally known as persons of the old school, and, consequently, of the strictest virtue and integrity; and who would never allow anything to be palmed upon them, nor suffer themselves to be sent on a sleeveless errand. With the evidence, then, of such reputable men, signed with their own hands, and sealed with their own seals, we shut the mouths of all pseudo-critics and jeerers, and bring them to acknowledge their incredulity to be unfounded, and to retract their injudi-

cious accusations. The attestation, addressed to myself and my brother, is of the following tenor:—

“ We the undersigned, at the request of the two respectable and very worthy young men and brothers *Peter Klim*, and *Andrew Klim*, do hereby certify, that we, on examining the books and papers of the late illustrious *Niels Klim*, found among them an autograph, entitled ‘Subterraneous Travels;’ to which was attached a Subterraneous grammar; together with a dictionary in two languages, *Danish* and *Quamitish*. That on comparing the admirable Latin translation of the renowned and highly praiseworthy *Abelin*, which at this present moment is in almost everybody’s hands, with the original writing, we discovered that the said translation was a

faithful one, and in no wise inferior to the text. In witness whereof we have hereunto set our hands and affixed our respective seals.

ADRIAN PETERSEN, (L.S.)

JENS THORLAKSEN (L.S.)

SWEND KLAK, (L.S.)

JOKUM BRANDER, (L.S.)

JENS GAD, for self and brother, (L.S.)

HIERONIMUS GIBBS, a Scot, (L.S.)

We hope and trust, that, with such forcible and authentic evidence as we have here adduced, every doubt will now be entirely removed. But should there, nevertheless, be found any one pertinacious enough still to persist in his disbelief, such power of incredulity we must endeavour to overcome with other weapons. It is a

well-known fact, that in that part of Norway called Finmark, there are people so profoundly skilled in the magic of Nature, (a science, into which the learned of other nations have scarcely ever pryed,) as to be able to raise a storm at pleasure, and again appease it; to transform themselves into wolves; to speak several languages, which are entirely unknown in our world; and to travel from the North-pole to the South-pole in less time than an hour. One of these Fins, whose name was *Peyvis*, had recently come to Bergen, where, at the request of the Sheriff, he gave so many surprising and miraculous proofs of his art and learning, that all the spectators pronounced him perfectly worthy of a Doctor's cap. Just at that time there issued from the press a severe critique upon the "Subterraneous Travels;" wherein the censor

referred them to tales of the nursery. This circumstance was the occasion of orders being given to the said Peyvis, while endeavours were still making to vindicate the honour of the *Klims*, to concentrate all the powers of his art, and attempt a voyage to the regions below the earth. He promised to comply with the Sheriff's commands; expatiating on his own peculiar faculty, promptness, and dexterity, in nearly the following words :—

What wilt thou, then, say ?

The strongest, the greatest, the mightiest on earth,  
From the south to the north,

My word must obey.

I rend in twain the rainbow,

And Sun, and Moon, and Stars, I headlong hurl below ;  
By moon-light make the thunder roar, and lightning  
glow :

The whirlwinds and the raging storms my voice do  
know,  
And from th' impenetrable rock I make sweet honey  
flow ;  
The North Sea's roaring waves I bid at once recoil,  
I freeze the hedge row fields, and make the icebergs  
boil.

What wilt thou, then, say ?  
What's there found in the ocean, what is there on earth,  
In the fire, in the air, from the South to the North,  
That my word don't obey ?

All shuddered with fear, and were filled  
with amazement, on hearing him pronounce  
such strange-sounding and incredible  
words. The Fin, however, immediately  
and undauntedly prepared himself for the  
voyage ; stripped himself to the skin, and  
(O, wonderful to behold !) suddenly trans-  
formed himself into an eagle, soared into

the atmosphere, and vanished in an instant. After a whole month's absence, early one Friday morning, a little before sunrise, our metamorphosing Doctor entered the Sheriff's room, but completely exhausted and breathless ; very similar to a horse that has been driven hard up an acclivity : his strength had entirely left him ; he swooned, whilst the sweat poured from his forehead in continual streams. It was not long before he came to himself again ; when, after breathing a little, and taking a gulp or two of brandy to revive his spirits, he gave us a full description of his adventures : particularizing, with a brilliancy of acumen, all that had befallen him in his aërial voyage, and in his travels in the Subterraneous regions. He related, also, that after divers sanguinary engagements having, at different times, taken



place, in which the *Klimites* had always borne away the bell, the reins of government were again in the hands of our *Niel's* son, who had long swayed the sceptre under the guardianship of his mother; but that grown old himself, and become illustrious through the numerous and brilliant exploits which he had performed, he now reigned far and wide in the Subterraneous world, under the name and title of *Niels the Second*. Every circumstance which this learned man related was immediately penned down, word for word; and will prove an extremely important, and at the same time interesting, Appendix to the annals of which the literati of Bergen have announced the publication, under the title of—*A Continuation of the History of the Fifth Monarchy*. Besides the annals already spoken

of, there will appear, at the same time, a Grammar of the *Quamitish* Language; which to the present age will, perhaps, not prove of any particular advantage; but will become so much the more important to posterity, as our country (without boasting), which is really fertile in projectful heads, will certainly not fail to embrace every possible opportunity, both night and day, of establishing a commercial intercourse with the *Quamites*,—a people who have invented machines, with which they are enabled, without the aid of witchcraft, to sail with perfect safety to the regions below the earth.

Shame on you now, ye incredulous mortals! and learn for the future, in matters of importance, to proceed with more prudence and circumspection! Shame

upon you, ye railers and jesters ! and beg pardon for your unfounded accusations ! Lastly, shame upon you, ye critics and censors ! and in order that the learned world may not again have to endure your audacious and unjust decisions, stifle them for the future in their birth ; or, if you had rather, you may all hang, strangle, or drown yourselves instead.



# NIELS KLIM'S

## SUBTERRANEAN TRAVELS.

---

### CHAPTER I.

---

#### THE AUTHOR'S DESCENT INTO THE SUBTERRANEAN REGIONS.

---

HAVING passed my examinations at the University of Copenhagen, and attained to the degree *laurea-  
undobalis* both in theology and philosophy, I made preparations for returning to my native country, and embarked in a vessel bound for Bergen, in Norway. This was in the year 1664. I was furnished with glittering testimonials from the professors of both the sciences I had studied, but was extremely bare of money; a fate which I had in common with all other Norwegian students, who generally return penniless from the temple of the Muses. The

wind was favourable, and after a fortunate passage of three days, I arrived at my native town, Bergen. I was more learned, but certainly not richer; and for some time after my return home, I subsisted on the kind support of my friends and relations. Although I lived in this beggarly sort of a way, I never spent my time in idleness; for, in order to extend my knowledge in natural philosophy, in the study of which I had already made some proficiency, I carefully and diligently examined the interior nature of the country, and particularly of the mountains; to attain which end, I rambled into every nook and corner in the province. There was no cliff so steep and craggy, that I hesitated to climb; no hole or pit so deep and frightful, into which I paused to descend; with the hope of discovering something or other that might be worthy the attention and examination of the physiologist.

Certain it is, that my native country abounds in a variety of things, that we not only never see, but even never once hear spoken of; which, if discovered in France, Italy, Germany, or in any other country that knows how to profit by, and magnify its fecundity into prodigies, the learned world would soon have been filled with endless treatises, and the philosopher with insatiate desire of reading.

Among divers extraordinary things, that which struck me as the most remarkable, was a hole or cavern on the top of a mountain, called by the country-folks Mount Flöien (the Weather-cock Mountain). Round the orifice, there circulated a soft and not unpleasant breeze, occasioned by the circumambient air being drawn into the hole, and again expelled with a continual groaning; which afforded the literati of Bergen, and particularly the renowned Abelin, and the profoundly-skilled astronomer and natural philosopher, Magister Edward, conrector of the Latin School, an opportunity of encouraging their countrymen,—as they were too old and too feeble for the enterprise,—to a close investigation of the peculiar nature of this hole. It appeared to them the more deserving of the attentive philosopher's research, as it really had, from time immemorial, much resembled a snoring man, who with vehemence inhales the air which his lungs have just expelled.

Stimulated not less by the encouragement of these great men than by my own natural inclination, I meditated on a descent into the hole; and unbosomed my design to some of my most intimate friends, who were struck with surprise and astonishment, exclaiming, that a person who would execute such a project, could not be far short of being both

frantic and desperate. Their remonstrances, however, on me were entirely lost; and instead of abating my once-kindled desire, they only served to fan the flame. My inclination led, and my indigent circumstances urged me to the study of nature, in spite of every danger that might attend it. Always destitute of money, and living on another's charity, became daily more and more insupportable to me; and I had the dismal prospect before my eyes of unalterable poverty; seeing every road to honour and preferment in my own country closed against me: unless, through some desperate and hazardous achievement, worthy of public regard, I should succeed in again opening them.

My resolution, after mature consideration, being firmly fixed, I prepared every thing necessary for the enterprise, and sallied forth from the town one Thursday morning at day-break, the weather being beautiful and serene. The reason of my setting out so early was, that I might be at home again in the afternoon, when my work was finished. How little did I then think, that I, like a second Phaëton,

Plunging headlong through the air in whizzing turns,  
Precipitated on another globe,  
Should not, till after ten years' woful tossing,  
Behold my country and my friends again!



This expedition was undertaken in the year 1665; when Hans Munthe and Lars Soerensen were the burgomasters, and Christian Bertelsen and Lars Sand were senators of Bergen. Four labourers attended me with rope and boat-hooks, which I might need in the descent. We proceeded direct to Sandwig, where the mountain is the easiest of ascent; and having reached the summit, we sat down a few moments and breakfasted, not far from the fatal hole. It was here that my heart first began to misgive me, and feel as if it anticipated some approaching disaster. I turned me round to my companions: "Which of you," said I, "will now first break the ice?" but received no answer. At this, my half-extinguished courage flamed anew: I suffered the rope to be fastened round my body, and made every preparation for the descent; first, however, recommending my soul fervently to the Almighty. My devotions being ended, I was then lowered gently into the orifice, after having first given my attendants the necessary directions what they were to do: namely, I ordered them to continue to veer away the rope until they should hear me bawl, at which signal they were to stop; and if I continued to bawl, they were, in that case, to hoist me up again with all speed. I held a boat-hook in my right hand, for the purpose therewith of pushing away any obstruction to my descent, and at the

same time to guide myself in the centre of the hole; and in this manner I was let to glide softly down. But scarce had I descended more than eleven or twelve yards, when the rope snapped. I conjectured immediately what misfortune had befallen me, from the sudden howling and lamentations of the four men above; which, however, quickly vanished, as I, with wonderful velocity, shot down into the dark abyss, and, like another Pluto,

Sank into the bowels of the yawning earth;

with the exception, that, instead of a sceptre, I had but a boat-hook in my hand.

I had now been plunging through thick darkness and incessant night for the space of a quarter of an hour, as near as I was able to guess whilst in such a perturbation; when, at length, I perceived a faint glimmering, much resembling a kind of twilight; and quickly afterwards, I could distinctly see a serene and bright firmament. I at first, in my simplicity, imagined that, either by the repercussion of the subterraneous air, or some such other adverse wind, I was again blown up; and that the hole, in sending forth its breath, had thrown me back upon the earth. But, as the sun, the firmament, and the stars, which I saw, were much smaller than those we are accustomed to behold, I was completely at a

loss to assign a cause for this singular phenomenon. I then thought, that the whole of this new celestial constructure must either be produced by a dizziness in my head, and a confused imagination, arising from the perplexity of my disordered brain; or that I must be dead, and conveyed to the mansions of the blessed. This last ridiculous idea, however, I quickly detected, on perceiving myself armed with a boat-hook, and dragging a long rope after me, well conceiving that neither rope nor hook was a necessary appendage to possess on my arrival in Paradise; and that the celestial inhabitants could never possibly approve of such like ornaments, with which I might be inclined, after the example of the giants, to storm heaven, and drive away the gods. Some considerable time after, when I had seriously reflected on the matter, I conceived that I must have descended to the subterraneous heavens; and that the opinions of those persons who maintain that the earth is hollow, and that within its shell there is another and a smaller world, with a smaller sun, smaller planets, and smaller stars, all in due proportion, connexion, and systematic arrangement, must be well founded. Events proved that I had conjectured right.

My course downwards having now continued pretty long, I began to experience that the rapidity

with which I was at first precipitated, gradually abated as I approached the planet, or celestial globe, which I perceived soon after my accelerated descent. As I drew nearer, it appeared visibly to increase in bulk ; so that at length I could discern, although through a cloudy atmosphere that surrounded it, both seas, hills, and valleys, upon its surface :

Like birds which hover round the muscle-clad rocks,  
Or soar 'twixt mountains' pinnacles, or billows' tops,  
Or on light wing flirt o'er the briny deep ;  
So, 'twixt earth and heaven, hung my body suspense.

I became now fully sensible that I was not only suspended and dangling in the celestial air, but that the perpendicular line, in which I had hitherto descended, was now changed into a circle. At this discovery I must acknowledge that my hair stood on end, fearing, as I did, that I must be metamorphosed either into a planet or a satellite, to be twirled round in perpetual motion until the world's end. When I considered, however, a little within myself, that my reputation and honour were in no wise likely to be tarnished through such a circumstance, and that a celestial globe, or at least the satellite of a celestial globe, always proceeding in planetary order, was, at any time, able to out-lustre

and eclipse a poor hungry Studiosus Philosophiæ, my spirits again revived ; and the more so, when I experienced that the celestial air in which I hung, had so strongly fortified me against the cravings of nature, that I felt neither hunger nor thirst. I just then remembered that I had a biscuit in my pocket : I took it out, merely to try, out of curiosity, whether in that condition I could relish it ; but on taking the first mouthful, I quickly perceived that all earthly food was become entirely nauseous ; I therefore cast it from me, as a useless incumbrance. How great was my amazement on this occasion, when I discovered that the biscuit not only hung dangling in the air, but,—O wonderful to relate !—began to describe around me a planetary orbit. This gave me a clear conception of the true laws of motion, according to which, all bodies placed in equipoise must move in circles.

How much soever I was dejected but a short time previous, at seeing myself a ball before mocking fate, I was now, on the other hand, equally elated on beholding myself exalted, not only to a self-subsistent planet, but to such a one even as would always be attended by a moon ; and therefore ought to be ranked among stars of the first magnitude, or planets of the first order. In acknowledging the whole of my vain imbecility, I must needs say, that

I was so immoderately inflated by this good fortune, that had I then met with all the burgomasters and all the senators of Bergen, I would merely have vouchsafed them a single glance, in order to have looked down upon them as insignificant atoms; nor would I have deigned to incline my head, much less to bow my head, before them.

In this state I remained three whole days. As I was continually carried round by and with the planet, which was now at no very immense distance from me, I could easily distinguish the day from the night, through observing the rising and setting of the subterraneous sun; though, after he was gone down, I never remarked any such nights as we experience on earth; for when this bright luminary was even far below the horizon, the heavens everywhere still continued light and shining, very similar to the full moon with us. This brightness, I concluded, must be reflected from the internal vault or hemisphere of this world; which borrowed its light from the sun placed in the centre. A superficial knowledge of astronomy assisted me in drawing this inference.

But the most ridiculous part of my conduct, whilst in the midst of enjoying this happy condition, perhaps, was, that I looked upon myself to be the

next after the immortal gods ; and as I considered myself in the quality of a new celestial light, I made my account of speedily being introduced, together with my satellite, into the catalogue of stars, by the astronomers upon the globe below ;—when, lo ! appeared a most hideous and terrific winged monster, which first threatened my right side, and then my left, now my front, and afterwards my rear, with the blow of annihilation. In the beginning, as it approached me, I took it to be one of the twelve signs of the Zodiac ; and secretly wished in my heart, if that really were the case, that it might be the Virgin ; for, out of the whole constellation-system, no one, save her, could, in that solitude, show me the smallest particle of motherhood, or afford me the least consolation. As this creature, however, drew nearer to me, I perceived that it was neither more nor less than a huge and frightful griffin. I was, in consequence of this discovery, so stupified, and so overtaken with fear, that I nearly forgot myself and my new celestial dignity ; and, in my inexpressible anxiety and perplexity of mind, I drew out the testimonials I had received from the University, which, as good luck would have it to be, were then in my pocket, to exhibit to this dreadful menacing enemy, and to prove to him that I possessed both my theological and philosophical examens ; was student, and, what is more, was *Bacca-*

*laureus*, and able to repulse any foreign adversary *in excipiendo forum*. As soon, however, as the first heat of my passion was over, I gradually recovered my reason, and laughed heartily at the folly of which I was guilty.

I could still not clearly perceive for what purpose this griffin followed me. I knew not whether to look upon him as an enemy, or consider him as a friend; or to believe—which appeared very probable—that, merely to satisfy his curiosity, he was inclined to indulge himself a little in contemplating my form. True it is, that a human body, suspended in the air, with a boat-hook in his hand, and dragging a long rope after him, would be a sufficiently ludicrous sight to attract any man, or brute beast, to stop and gaze at it. The extraordinary figure that I then cut, occasioned, as I afterwards learnt, the inhabitants on my side of the planet, to hold divers controversial colloquies, and to form several hypotheses concerning me. The philosophers and astronomers took me to be a comet, and judged the rope to be the comet's tail. Many even insisted, that such an uncommon appearance in the heavens must certainly portend some imminent calamity, not short of pestilence, famine, or some other direful and remarkable event. Others again went much further,—even far beyond the possibility of observa-



tion,—and with much precision delineated my form; so that before my arrival on the globe, I was already defined, described, painted, and even engraved on copper.

All this I afterwards heard mentioned with inward merriment, and a sort of tickling delight, when I had been for some time upon the planet, and had learned the subterraneous language. It is here worthy of being remarked, that there are in the interior of the earth certain extraordinary stars, which suddenly appear, and again as suddenly vanish; and which are denominated Scissici (or the hairy). They are described as being very hideous, with blood-red hair standing upright on their heads, similar to hogs' bristles, and having a tail much resembling a long shaggy beard; they are therefore reckoned by the natives, even as they would be with us, among the celestial wonders.

But to the history again. The griffin had now approached near enough to attack me with his wings; and was even on the point of assaulting me with his foot; so that I could plainly discern with what view he paid me a visit. I therefore commenced acting on the defensive against this formidable and warlike enemy; took the boat-hook in both my hands, and not only with it parried off his

audacious attacks, but forced him even at times to retreat in haste ; until at length, after many a fruitless blow, whilst he continued still to tug at me, I succeeded in passing the hook between his wings, and sticking it into the nape of his neck with such force, that I was unable to draw it out again. The wounded monster, with a frightful shriek, now hurried headlong down to the planet below ; and I, who was already weary of, and disgusted with, my new celestial astro-dignity,—perceiving that it, like every other greatness and excellence, was exposed to subversion and total decay,—

Now, with the griffin, which was earthward-bound,  
 Did carelessly descend. As from the astral throng  
 A lucid star doth seem to guide its course along  
 Th' etherial vault,—thus sank I to the ground.

And in this manner was the circle which I had lately described once more changed into a perpendicular line.

After being carried down, in the beginning, somewhat violently against the thicker air, the whizzing whereof, for a length of time, completely stunned my hearing, I came with an easy and harmless fall down upon the globe, together with the griffin, who died soon after of his wounds.

When I arrived upon this planet, I judged it to be night, merely from the absence of the sun, and not from the darkness; for it was even then so light that I could distinctly read every letter in my testimonials. This nocturnal light is reflected from the firmament, or the innermost shell of our earth; the one half of which shines like our full moon. In respect of the brilliancy of the light, there is, for the reason stated, scarcely any difference between day and night; except in so far, that the sun is away during the nights, and on that account they are somewhat colder than the days.

## CHAPTER II.

---

THE AUTHOR'S ARRIVAL AMONG THE INHABITANTS UPON  
THE PLANET NAZAR.

---

MY aërial voyage being ended, and I having now reached the planet both safe and sound, without even the most trivial hurt—since the speed with which the griffin in the beginning shot down, by degrees abated, as his strength grew weaker,—I lay for some time motionless on the ground, awaiting the arrival of day, to see what novelty might present itself to view. I now remarked that my former human weakness again began to manifest itself, and I felt come upon me both drowsiness and hunger; bitterly regretting that I had thrown away the biscuit. Wearied out with these, and a multitude of other troubles, I at length fell into a profound sleep.

I had reposed for the space of two hours, as near as I could guess, when a frightful growling, or

lowing, which had long disturbed my slumbers, entirely awoke me. Whilst asleep, I had had many wonderful dreams. Among other strange things, I dreamed that I was again arrived in Norway; and was then engaged in relating to the people, in the streets and lanes, my marvellous adventures. I afterwards thought that I was in the church at Fanoë, not far from Bergen, and listening to the singing of the parish-clerk, Niels Andersen, whose croaking voice, as usual, miserably annoyed my acoustic organs. On awaking, for some time I really imagined that it was this man's howling which had interrupted my sleep. But as I at the same instant descried a bull standing very near to me, I concluded that it must have been his growling which had awaked me.

The day had dawned, and the rising sun began to gild the verdant oaks and fertile fields, which, in beautiful luxuriance and variety, everywhere spread and extended themselves before my astonished sight. I perceived, at no great distance, some few trees in a cluster; but how great was my amazement when I observed them moving to and fro, notwithstanding that it was so perfectly calm that there was not wind enough even to have moved a feather. Seeing the bull now come growling towards me, I fled in haste, quaking with fright, to a tree which

was standing not far from me, and endeavoured in my anxiety to ascend it. Scarcely, however, had I got rightly up, when it gave an effeminate, but shrill and piercing shriek, similar to that of an exasperated woman; and I, at the same time, received such a violent box on the ear, that a dimness came immediately before my eyes, and I fell headlong to the ground. I lay as if entranced, or struck by lightning, and ready to yield up the ghost; when all around me I heard a buzzing and muttering noise, very like the hubbub and confusion made by the stock-jobbers on the Exchange, when warmly engaged in the buying and selling of stock. I opened my eyes,—as I was not dead,—and saw the field all about me swarming with trees; where, but a short time before, I had only remarked six or seven. Nothing could equal the amazement with which I was filled, on finding myself thus in the midst of a living forest; my head became dizzy, and I was ready to weep with terror and alarm. I at first thought I must be dreaming, notwithstanding I was perfectly awake. Then I imagined myself to be in the midst of an assemblage of apparitions, or surrounded by evil spirits; and divers other such like incoherencies entered my head. I had, however, but little time to contemplate the nature of, or meditate on the cause of, these automations; for a second tree hastily ap-

proached me, bent down one of its branches, the extremity of which was armed with six twigs, that answered the purpose of fingers, raised me suddenly from the ground, and bore me away, in spite of all my piteous and doleful lamentations. Innumerable other trees, of various sorts and sizes, followed. They uttered certain articulate sounds, which to me were entirely foreign; and whereof I could only retain in my memory the two words, *Pikel Emi*—of which they made very frequent use. The signification of these words is, *an extraordinary baboon*; and such was the appellation they bestowed on me; as they concluded, from my shape and dress, that I must be a species of ape; although of a different kind from those apes which are common in their country. Several imagined me to be an inhabitant of the firmament, and conceived that the birds must have conveyed me thither; averring, that the annals of their planet could fully testify, that like circumstances had frequently happened before. All this came to my knowledge a few months after, when I had learned the subterraneous language.

In my present situation, I was so far from comprehending the nature of these living and speaking trees, that, through fright and consternation, I even nearly forgot my own. Just as little was I able to

conceive, what this procession, which moved forward with slow and solemn step, should betoken; though, from the hasty, and apparently indignant mumbling, muttering, and grumbling, which every where resounded through the field, I could not hope for much good. The offence with which I was charged, I concluded from the circumstances, must really be well founded; for the tree, into which I, in my anxiety, when I fled from the bull, began to ascend, was neither more nor less than the Sheriff's wife of the neighbouring city. The injured person's dignified character, tended infinitely to add to the aggravation of my crime; for it appeared that I was inclined to violate the person, not of a woman of the lower order, but of a lady of the highest rank; and that, too, in the open field, and in the presence of divers eye-witnesses: an entirely new and horrid sight for such a modest, chaste, virtuous, and well-bred people as they are. At length we arrived in the city, whither I was brought a prisoner. The houses of it had the appearance, not only of magnificence, but its divisions, its streets and lanes, were distinguished for their evenness, order, and symmetry. All the buildings were so lofty and majestic, that they might be compared with so many towers or steeples. The streets swarmed with trees, all promenading, which in passing saluted each other by bowing down their branches; and



the lower they bent them, the greater was the proof of esteem, respect, and veneration. Just then there came, accidentally, out of a particularly magnificent house, a remarkably fine oak; when all the other trees immediately receded, bowing down, in like manner, most of their branches; from which one might infer, that it was more than an ordinary person. I discovered soon after, that it was the Sheriff of the city; the reputation of whose wife, it was alleged, I so greatly had injured. In the mean time, I was conducted into a saloon in the said Sheriff's house. As soon as I had entered, the door was locked after me, and strongly barricaded; on which occasion, I might have congratulated myself on being admitted a member of the Rasping-House (Bridewell). My fear respecting the not-to-be-envied situation wherein I was placed, was still the more confirmed, on my observing on the outside, in the front of the house, three trees walking to and fro, as guards; each being armed with six axes, one for every branch; for they possessed, in lieu of arms, so many branches, and in lieu of fingers, so many twigs. I remarked that on the top of each stem or trunk of the trees, a head was placed, which much resembled the human head; and underneath, instead of roots, they had each two legs, but so short, that tortoises might vie with the inhabitants of this planet in running. It would have been an easy

matter for me, in case I had not been incarcerated, to escape, if opportunity had offered ; as I certainly was able to fly, in comparison with these runners.

In fine, not to detain the curious reader any longer, I now evidently perceived, that these trees were not only the inhabitants of this planet, but that they were also rational beings ; and I admired the variety with which nature charms, in her multifarious and mutable forms in the creation. These trees are not near so tall as the trees with us, for the greatest number do not exceed the height of a man ; and some are even much shorter, which might be compared with flowers or plants : these I concluded must be children.

It is inconceivable into what a labyrinth of meditation these phenomena led my thoughts ; how many sighs were extorted from my bosom, and with what painful hankering and longing, I, while in this condition, called to remembrance my beloved father-land. Although these extraordinary trees appeared to be social beings, since they were gifted with the use of speech, and endowed with so much reason that they might be classed among rational animals, still I doubted whether they could be confronted with the human race ; and at the same time feared that justice, benevolence, and such other

moral virtues, were entirely unknown to them. I was so completely absorbed in these tormenting reflections, that my bowels yearned, and the tears started and ran down my cheeks in continual streams. Whilst I thus, in the most effeminate manner, was giving vent to my sorrow; and crouching under the weight of my afflictions, the guards, whom, because of the axes which they bore, I took to be lictors, entered my prison; whence I was conducted, preceded by them, to a distinguished building, situated in the centre of the market-place. I now looked upon myself in the light of one who had attained to the dignified office of dictator—more eminent than any Roman consul; for he was honoured only with twelve axes in his retinue, whilst I, on the contrary, advanced with eighteen preceding me. At the door of the edifice, whither I was conducted, stood *Justice*, carved out in the form of a tree, holding a balance in one of its branches. It was shaped after the figure of a virgin, with an air of importance and rigid inflexibility; and with a sharp and piercing look, whose mien was neither forbidding nor defying, but was distinguished by a certain mournful gravity. From this I concluded, without falling into error, that the building was the Town-Hall. I was now led into the Justice-room, the floor of which was paved with

quadrangular highly polished marble slabs of various colours. Here I perceived a golden chair, resembling a judgment-seat, upon which sat a tree exalted in the midst of twelve assessors, or benchers; who, in becoming and suitable order, were seated, in like manner, on so many lower chairs, six on each side of the Lord Chief Justice. This great personage was a palm-tree of the middle stature; but was distinguishable from the other judges by the variety of its leaves, which possessed every colour in nature. The whole were surrounded by four and twenty lictors, each of whom was armed with six axes. It is impossible for me to describe the terror and consternation into which I was thrown, on beholding these persons arrayed in such warlike and formidable order; concluding therefrom, that this nation must be excessively cruel and blood-thirsty.

On my entering the Justice-room, all the judges, senators, counsellors, and others, rose from their seats, and raised their branches high in the air; after which religious ceremony, they again seated themselves. This being finished, I was then arraigned at the bar, between two trees, the trunks of which were clad in sheep-skins. I conjectured that these must be the pleading barristers, which really proved to be the case.

Before the trial proceeded, the head of the Lord Chief Justice was enveloped in a sort of black covering. This being done, the accusing barrister, in opening the case, made a short speech, which he repeated three times ; to which my advocate replied in a like manner, and equally concise. To these speeches followed a perfect silence. This having continued for about the space of half an hour, the Lord Chief Justice, after first suffering the envelope which covered his face to be taken away, rose from his seat, and lifting up his branches towards heaven, pronounced, with much suspension of voice and great emphasis, some words, which I imagined to be the sentence against me. When he had delivered his speech, or address, I was immediately re-conducted to my former prison ; expecting that ere long I should receive a severe chastisement, in the form of a flogging on my bare posteriors, at the cart's tail.

In this my solitary confinement, I reflected on all the events which had lately come to pass, and really inwardly ridiculed the folly and simplicity of this people ; for that which they had recently been doing, seemed to me much more like performing a farce than conducting a criminal process ; and all that I had observed of their attitudes, gestures, ornaments, and mode of legal procedure, appeared to me more suit-

able for jugglers and ballet-dancers, than to be introduced into the solemn and most high court of judicature. I afterwards brought to mind the great difference between things here and on our globe ; and was then,—and not till then,—fully sensible of the pre-eminence of the Europeans over all other human beings. Notwithstanding I condemned in my heart the stupidity, and pitied the intellectual deficiency, of this subterranean nation, still I could not deny to them a rank above the brute creation ; for the beautiful appearance of their city, the symmetry of the buildings, together with various other things which I observed, evidently proved, that these trees were neither entirely deficient in reason, nor totally ignorant of certain principal mechanical arts. I conceived, however, that that was all that I could fairly advance in their praise.

Whilst I, in this manner, was meditating, and talking softly to myself, the door of my prison was opened, and a male tree entered, having in his hand a triangular surgical instrument, with which he, after having unbuttoned my bosom and bared my arm, very skilfully made an incision, or rather, by an act of pertusion, struck a hole into the middle vein. When he had taken from me as much blood as he conceived enough, he again bound up the arm, with equal dexterity, surveyed the blood with much

attention, and, whilst betraying evident signs of wonder and amazement, he went silently away. All this tended more and more to confirm the opinion I had formed of this people's disordered intellects. But some time after, when I had learned the subterraneous language, and acquired a clear conception of all these matters, my contempt for them was changed into admiration. The practice of the court of judicature, which I so inconsiderately had censured, was explained to me in the following way. From the shape of my body, as well as from my figure altogether, it was supposed that I was an inhabitant of the firmament. It appeared that I had attempted to violate the person of a modest and virtuous lady of the highest rank; and for that aggravated misdemeanour, of which all surmise judged me guilty, I was conducted to the senate-house. One of the pleading barristers had much exaggerated my offence;—maintaining that I ought to suffer the punishment which the law awards. The other, on the contrary, did not entirely deprecate the punishment; but suggested and advised that it should be deferred, until it was fully ascertained who I was, whence I came, and whether I was of the brute creation or a rational being. The raising up of the branches towards heaven, I was informed, was a customary religious ceremony; which was always observed before the sentence was

passed upon any delinquent. The pleaders were clothed in sheep-skins—emblematic of innocence—to remind them of the uprightness and integrity which they ought to exhibit in the treatment of any action at law. And really I remarked that all the barristers in this place were upright and irreproachable characters; a circumstance which clearly proves, that it is possible, in a well-regulated state, to find both honest and honourable advocates. The statutes in that country are so rigid against cavillers and misinterpreters, or perverters of the law, that no quirks, chicanery, insidiousness, or partiality, can be defended or palliated; no knavery or dishonesty can be deprecated; and no delinquent can escape punishment. It is as impossible for a criminal to elude pursuit, as it is for him to find a refuge, or a person willing to afford him harbour.

The three-fold repetition of their speeches, was in consequence of this people's peculiarly dull powers of apprehension, which distinguished them from every other nation upon that planet; for but very few of them possessed faculty sufficient to understand that which they had carelessly read, or to comprehend what they had only once heard related. It was looked upon, that those persons who were capable of immediately understanding a common proposition, must necessarily lack judgment;



therefore, people of quick perceptive faculties were seldom or never selected for any great or important employment. Experience had taught them to know, that the republic had always been on the totter when under the administration of clever heads,—better and more generally known by the appellation of great geniuses,—and that men of a slow, or, as they were sarcastically denominated, of a dull apprehension, had invariably restored things to order, which the former had completely entangled. To these extraordinary opinions, I could at first by no means yield my assent ; but, nevertheless, after serious reflection, they appeared not to be so entirely inconsistent. What excited my astonishment the most, was the history of the Lord Chief Justice. That personage was a virgin, who was born and educated in the place, and was appointed by the Regent to the office of *Kaki*, or Chief Judge of the city. It must here be remarked, that this people, in nominating any person to fill a high public situation, never take the sex into account ; but, after a strict examination of his or her abilities, confide the affairs of the state to the most worthy person among those, whose capacity has been brought under consideration and found appropriate to the task. In order to judge rightly of every one's qualifications and talents, seminaries are established, the superintendents or inspectors of which are called *Karatti*;

which word, in their language, signifies essayers or examiners. Their occupation is that of watching the progress and diligence in learning of every one under their care ; of penetrating into, and examining strictly, the general state of the minds, and natural bent of the dispositions, of the young students ; and afterwards to hold a Probation, and once a year to deliver to the Prince a designation of such as are qualified to fill public situations ; distinguishing in which branch of education each person has made proficiency, and in particular excels, and in what employment he or she could be of the greatest advantage to the father-land. After the Prince is put in possession of the list of candidates, he causes their names to be inscribed in a book kept for that purpose ; so that he can daily call to mind, and have before his eyes, those whom he thinks meet to promote to the vacant situations.

The virgin above-mentioned, had, four years before, obtained the distinguishing and commending attestation from the *Karatti* ; and was, in consequence, appointed by the Prince to the office of Chief Judge in the senate—and that, too, of her native city ; a practice which the inhabitants of Potu think very religiously of ;—conceiving that no person can know the internal state and condition of a municipality so well as those who were born and brought up in the

midst of it. Her name was Palmka; and had now for the space of three years discharged the duties of her office with such rigidity, that she had thereby attained to the highest degree of renown. She was everywhere looked upon as the most profoundly learned, wise, and judicious tree of the whole city; for her powers of apprehension were so extremely dull, that she hardly ever understood any case or subject,—and then not without much trouble and difficulty,—unless it was repeated to her three or four times. But having once formed a conception of it, she, with surprising discernment, penetrated quickly to the bottom, decided the most difficult points, and solved the most abstruse problems with so much judgment, that all her verdicts were considered as so many oracles.

Like Themis, she in the even balance poised  
 Preponderating justice against fraud;  
 And she distinguish'd truth's peculiar rays  
 From falsehood's borrow'd lustre,—goddess-like.

She, therefore, during the whole time she had filled her important situation, had never pronounced any decree, or passed any sentence, that was not extolled to the skies, and confirmed by the Supreme Council of State in Potu.

This caused me to perceive, on a closer examination and reflection, that the Potuites, through not excluding the fair sex from office, howbeit, did not act so Bedlamitish as I at first imagined. I thought to myself; suppose the Sheriff's wife of Bergen were to sit in judgment in the senate, instead of her husband; or counsellor Severin's daughter—a well-spoken, clever, and witty young lady—were to plead instead of her stupid and dolter-headed father; perhaps jurisprudence, by the bye, might not, in consequence, sustain any considerable loss, nor justice and equity so often fall into qualms and fainting fits.

I even went deeper in my meditations, and reflected on the precipitate dispatch used in our Courts of justice in Europe—particularly in the Courts of Revision or Chancery,—and considered the expeditious manner wherein trials are frequently hurried through, and sentences passed; the latter of which, on a closer investigation of the relative matter, would, in all probability, run the risk of being annulled.

For their having proceeded to open one of my veins, in the manner already described, they gave the following reason. When any person is convicted of a crime, instead of flogging, maiming, or behead-

ing such a malefactor, he is ordered to be bled ; to ascertain whether the offence was committed with malice aforethought, or whether it was prompted by some irregularity in the blood, or disorder in the fluids of the body. If either, or both of the latter, a cure of the indisposition is endeavoured to be effected ; in order that the legal process may have for its end, the more of reformation than of punishment : nevertheless, it is always considered an ignominy, to be sentenced by the Council to be phlebotomized. In case any one who has undergone this correction, should a second time be found guilty of any offence, he is then condemned as an unworthy member of the state, and banished to the firmament ; where all, without distinction, are admitted. Regarding the condition of this exile, I shall hereafter give some farther elucidation.

The cause of the surprise, which the surgeon who bled me exhibited, on beholding my blood, was, that the inhabitants of that planet, instead of blood, have a transparent whitish fluid in their veins ; which, in proportion to the more or less whiteness that it possesses, is considered a greater or less indication of guilt, or purity and innocence.

Of all these matters, I formed a clear conception, when I had acquired a knowledge of the subter-

ranous language; and consequently began to entertain a more favourable opinion of this nation, which I inconsiderately had held in so much contempt. I remarked, that these trees, which in the beginning I took to be both stupid and clownish, had a moderately good colouring of humanity about them; I therefore felt no apprehension for the safety of my life; and became the more confirmed in the confidence I entertained, on seeing them twice a day bring me something to subsist upon. My food consisted, generally, of fruit, herbs, and all sorts of beans; and my drink was a clear, sweet, and exceedingly delicious juice.

The Sheriff, in whose house I remained a prisoner, caused it to be immediately communicated to the Prince, who resided at his palace not far from the city, that he, by accident, had become possessed of a rational animal, of a most extraordinary shape and species. This information, as it may be imagined, naturally excited the curiosity of his illustrious Highness. He commanded the Sheriff, first to have me instructed in the language of the country, and then to send me to the palace. I was therefore immediately provided with a master; under whose instructions I made such progress, as to be able, in the short space of half a year, to con-

verse pretty fluently with any of the inhabitants. As soon as I had acquired the rudiments of the language, a fresh order arrived from the Court, saying, that my instructions should be continued, and that I should be placed in the Seminary of the City; where the Karatti were to examine my intellectual powers, and judge in which art or science I gave the greatest hopes of advancement. The commands of the Prince were punctually obeyed. During the time that I was at the seminary, there was as much care bestowed in the formation of my body, as that of my mind; and they gave themselves, in particular, a great deal of trouble to make me look as much like a tree as possible; for which purpose they bound false branches to different parts of my body, in so neat and dexterous a manner, that it was really a pleasure to behold their admirable contrivance.

In the mean time, my landlord, a very affable, communicative, and inquisitive sort of a tree, entertained me every afternoon, when I had returned from the seminary, with divers amusing historical tales; and various dialogues we held, wherein he interrogated me on almost every subject. He listened with much pleasure and attention to what I related to him respecting my voyage down; but at nothing

was he so much amazed, as at the description I gave him of our earth, and of the immeasurable heavens that surround it, swarming and glittering with innumerable stars. All this awoke in him the most lively eagerness and curiosity. When, however, I related to him, that the trees with us were lifeless, immoveable, and rooted in the ground, he appeared very dejected ; and on my assuring him, that on our earth we felled them for firewood, wherewith to warm our houses, and cook our victuals, he then became nearly frantic. Nevertheless, when he had seriously reflected on the matter, his passion and indignation abated ; then raising his branches, which amounted to five, towards heaven, he praised the wonderful judgment of the great Creator, into whose manifold and deep designs no mortal could penetrate. He now again listened calmly and attentively to what I further related. His wife, who had hitherto always avoided my presence, became, on understanding fully the reason of my being arraigned at the bar of the tribunal, again reconciled to me ; and she acquitted me of all suspicion, when she learnt that I, in the innocence of my heart, had been deceived by the figure of a tree, up into which we, in our country, unceremoniously climb. But in order not to run any risk, in this newly acquired confidence and familiarity, of opening a very lately healed sore,



and thereby losing her ladyship's good graces, I took special care never to converse with her, unless in the presence of her husband, and with his permission.

## CHAPTER III.

DESCRIPTION OF THE CITY OF KEBÄ.

---

DURING the period which was appointed for my receiving instructions at the seminary, my landlord used frequently to take me round in the city, for the purpose of showing me every thing that was uncommon and worthy of notice. We perambulated the streets without experiencing the least hindrance, or stoppage ; and, what much surprised me, without causing the smallest concourse of curious spectators. We are all aware, that with us things are far otherwise ; for at every opportunity to witness a trivial, and almost every-day occurrence, the populace flock together by thousands, in order to satisfy their so-easily-excited curiosity. The inhabitants, however, of this planet, who are quite the reverse of us, appeared as much attached to stale matters of moment, as to new trinkets or gewgaws.

*Keba*, which is the name of this city, is the second in size in the principality of Potu. The

inhabitants of this town are so much distinguished for their serious deportment, gravity, and sobriety of mind, that each of the citizens might pass for a counsellor, or senator. To old age is paid here, in particular, the greatest honour and respect; and in no place in the world are old people—to whose opinions, nay, to whose very wink the youth of Potu do every homage—more highly esteemed and venerated. I wondered, therefore, the more, that so sedate and temperate a people should be addicted to gaming, or have the least taste for plays, or any sort of theatrical diversions; which to me appeared entirely inconsistent with their natural gravity. My landlord, who perceived my astonishment, endeavoured, by all the means in his power, to abate it. “We have,” said he, “throughout every part of this principality, a custom of varying alternately our serious occupations and recreative amusements:—

Our duty done, we then our harmless sports pursue,  
To renovate our strength, to do our task anew.

For amongst other excellent regulations in this country, to the inhabitants permission is granted, for their enjoying every sort of amusement, by which it is thought the mind is invigorated and made more fit for laborious occupations; without mentioning, that such like diversions, practised in

moderation, have always the effect of driving away melancholy ; which is not unfrequently the mother of sedition, rebellion, and a number of desperate schemes of opposition to legitimate power. For this reason, they were accustomed, after their serious occupations, to recreate themselves with plays and other amusements ; but with so much caution and circumspection, that they never suffered their gravity to degenerate into austerity, nor their gaiety into wantonness. How much soever I was delighted with all this, I became equally gloomy, on learning that disputations formed part of their theatrical entertainments. At certain appointed times of the year, after wagers being first made, and a stated premium set forth for him who should be declared the conqueror, the two persons destined to dispute or wrangle, advanced and publicly challenged each other, like boxers, to a trial of their respective merits ; and suffered themselves to be incited, and set together by the ears, in nearly the same way as game-cocks, or other quarrelsome and fighting animals, are egged on with us. It is the general fashion there, among the rich, to keep disputants or wranglers ; whom they train up in a manner similar to that used here on earth, in breaking in dogs of the chase. They are instructed in the science of sophistry or dialectics, in order to acquire a glibness of tongue and a flippant loquacity, which are requi-

site at this annually appointed contest. A certain rich citizen of the place, whose name was *Hennoki*, had, through this means, amassed an immensity of wealth; and had gained, in the space of three years, by the victories of the disputant whom he supported, no less a sum than four thousand *rickatu*. Several persons, who, in the like manner, had scraped together enormous heaps of money, had, at different times, offered him vast sums for this disputant; but hitherto he had not been induced to part with a treasure, which yielded him annually such a considerable income. The wrangler who is now the subject of remark, possessed such a coarse, rustical, unpolished volubility of tongue, that with the greatest facility he could advance a proposition, confute it, and again establish it; could make that which was crooked appear perfectly straight; and what was square, to assume the form of a circle. He was such a troublesome, brow-beating caviller, who laid about him so forcibly with syllogisms, dialectical chicaneries, shifts, and sophistry, that the bellowing noise of his distinguishing, subsuming, and limiting, had the wonderful effect of making all his opponents as silent as stock-fish. With inward affliction of soul, I was a few times spectator, and one of the auditory of these performances; which to me appeared both unbecoming and even wicked, in consequence of those sacred and honourable exer-

cises, which are so great an embellishment to our universities, being changed into mere theatricals and stage tricks ; and when I called to mind, that I myself had wrangled three times publicly, and had gained thereby much applause, and acquired a high reputation, I could scarcely refrain from weeping with vexation. I was, however, not near so much offended with the matter itself, as with the manner in which the performances were conducted ; for on such occasions, certain inciters, who are called *Kabalki*, on perceiving that the vehemence of the disputants began to flag, pricked them in the side with a kind of awl, to animate and encourage them anew. I pass over several other circumstances and facts, which I blush but to think of ; and which I could do no less than condemn in so enlightened a people as this in reality is.

Besides these wranglers, whom they ironically call *Masbaki*, or Brothers of a Kidney, several kinds of four-footed animals, both wild and tame, as well as many birds of prey, are kept ; which for money, in like manner, are suffered and incited to fight for the diversion of the spectators. I asked my landlord how it was possible, that so judicious and discreet a nation could abolish, for the sake of such gambling combats, those noble exercises ; whereby the understanding is sharpened, truth discovered

and elicited, and every one taught to speak in courteous language, and to converse with ease and affability? He answered me, that in barbarous times, such exercises as I alluded to were held in great esteem; but as experience had long since demonstrated, that they served much more to conceal truth, make youth wanton, excite disturbances, and prove prejudicial to the attainment of more useful knowledge, the Academy had thought proper to change them for plays or comedies; and the result had already shown, that the students had thereby advanced much further in erudition, than by quiet reading and tranquil meditation. With this answer, although it appeared clever and sensible enough, yet, for all that, I felt in my mind by no means satisfied.

In this city there is established for the rest of the people a Gymnasium, or Academy, in which the liberal arts are taught with more gravity and decorum. My landlord conducted me, one solemn festival day, to the high school's auditory, at the time of creating a *Madik*, or professor of philosophy. The business proceeded without the least ceremony; except in so far, that the candidate held a neat and well-grounded discourse on a certain physical problem; whereupon he became inscribed, by the President of the Academy, as one of their

number ; and received a licence to teach publicly. After our return home, when my landlord asked me how I liked this manner of obtaining promotion, I answered him, that it appeared to me, in respect to themselves, much too dry and insipid. I related to him, that with us the *magistri* and doctors were obliged to wrangle previous to their being created to those dignities ; at which information he wrinkled up his nose in a very strange sort of a way. He then inquired of me, not without a degree of contemptuousness, regarding the nature of these disputations ; in what way they were maintained ; and wherein they differed from others in an ordinary way ? I told him, that they in general treated on matters of the greatest importance ; particularly on such as regarded the manners, language, and dress, of two ancient nations, which had flourished conspicuously in Europe in days of yore. I assured him, that I, myself, in three very learned disputations, had said and maintained, all that I conceived could be said and maintained, respecting the slippers belonging to these said two ancient nations. On hearing me utter these words, he burst into so immoderate a fit of laughter, that it echoed through the whole house. His wife, when she heard these roars of mirth, came hobbling to us with all speed, curious to know what circumstance could possibly occasion them ; but I was so provoked at this behaviour alto-



gether, that I did not deign to make her any reply : for who could endure to hear so momentous an affair treated with contempt and laughter ? Her husband explained to her the whole cause of this convulsive burst of risibility, and she laughed at it, to my inward mortification, as heartily and equally as loud as my landlord himself.

It was not long before these historical facts were spread through the whole city ; where they furnished matter for incessant sarcasms. Among other persons, there was the wife of a certain great senator, by nature of so very sprightly and merry a disposition, that she, on hearing of the circumstances, fell into so violent a laughing fit, that she nearly burst her sides ; and, in consequence of her dying of a fever some time after, it was everywhere muttered and whispered, that the immoderate paroxysm of laughter, through attacking and over-straining her lungs, drove, as the saying is, a nail into her coffin. This rumour was, however, only a mere and loose conjecture ; for no one knew rightly of what disease she died. For the rest, she was an excellent wife, and a dignified and majestic housekeeper ; for she possessed no less than seven branches : an extraordinary number for one of her sex ; for which reason, every feeling, decent, and well-bred tree was greatly concerned for her death. She was in-

tered at night, on the outside of the walls of the city, in the same dress that she wore at the time of her decease; for it is, by an express law, here prohibited to bury any dead within the city; as it is thought that the air would become thereby charged with infectious vapours, exhaled from the inhumated bodies. It is likewise forbidden to apparel dead corpses in costly attire, and to make therewith a pompous and magnificent funeral procession; as they become, very soon after, in spite of all such useless expenses, food only for worms. With these different regulations, I must acknowledge, I was well pleased. It is a custom here to hold funeral orations, and to preach funeral sermons; but these consist in mere exhortations, addressed to the auditory, to lead honest and virtuous lives, and to keep mortality constantly in view. There are, on such occasions, censors appointed, whose business it is to take note of how far the merits of the deceased are panegyricized, beyond a strict adherence to the principles of truth. It must here be observed, that a severe punishment is inflicted upon him who exaggerates, or invents any praise, reputation, or honour; therefore, nowhere are eulogies and panegyrics bestowed more sparingly than in Potu. Being, myself, a short time after, one of the auditory of such a funeral oration, I inquired of my landlord respecting the rank and station of the de-

ceased hero, whose memory was honoured in so solemn a manner? He answered me, that it was a peasant, who had been sent on an errand to the city, and had suddenly died on the road. How much soever the subterraneous people had ridiculed me but a short time before, I now in turn ridiculed them again with a loud and violent fit of laughter; and on that occasion I requited their sarcasms, vented against us Europeans, with more than standard weight. “A peasant?” bawled I, “wherefore then are not also oxen, bulls, et cetera, the companions and colleagues of the peasants, in like manner panegyricized from the public rostrum? As they are employed in similar occupations, they are capable,—are they not?” said I, “of furnishing like matter for a funeral oration?” But my landlord chid me, and bade me keep my laughter within the bounds of decorum; informing me, at the same time, that the husbandmen, or tillers of the ground, were there held in the greatest esteem, in consequence of their useful and important employment; and that no rank, or station in life was, in that country, considered more noble and honourable than that of the peasantry; for which reason every one in that condition, who laboured as an honest and upright father of a family, was greeted by the people of the towns, with the honourable appellation of Nourisher and Protector. Hence arises the custom,

in the beginning of harvest-time, or in the palm-month, when the peasants come to the city with a great number of waggons, laden with provisions, of their being received, on the outside of the gates, by the municipal authorities, under the sound of trumpets and cymbals, and conducted into the town with triumphal joy and merriment. I cannot express the astonishment I felt on hearing this account ; particularly, when I reflected on the fate of our peasantry, who are but scoffed at, while held in a galling state of vassalage ; and whose occupations are esteemed both mean and despicable, when contrasted with those, which luxury, prodigality, and voluptuousness, have introduced upon the stage of the world : I mean those of cooks, pastry-cooks, confectioners, hair-dressers, dancing-masters, and innumerable others. This I related to my landlord some time after ; but with a strict injunction upon him, to observe the most inviolable secrecy ; for fear that the subterraneous people should entertain too unfavourable an opinion of my brother Europeans above ground. He assured me that no tree would ever obtain the knowledge of it from his lips. He then conducted me up into the auditory, where a funeral oration was to be pronounced. I must candidly avow, that I never, on a like occasion, heard any discourse so well-grounded, so appropriate, so full of veracity, and so free from every kind of hypo-

crisy, as that; which appeared to me a perfect pattern, whereby all preachers of funeral sermons ought to regulate themselves. The orator gave first a delineation of the virtues of the deceased; he enumerated all his vices and frailties; concluding his discourse with an admonition to the auditory to guard themselves against the latter.

As we were returning home from hearing this oration, we met a criminal, conducted by three watchmen or guards. He had lately, pursuant to the sentence of the Lord Chief Justice, undergone the arm-punishment (as the already-mentioned phlebotomizing is called), and was then on his way to the common hospital of the town. I inquired wherein consisted the nature of his crime; and was answered that he had dared publicly to examine, and expose to consideration, God's nature, quality, and attributes—a thing totally forbidden throughout this country; where all such like unseasonable treatises and dissertations are considered so fool-hardy and impertinent, that it is thought they can only be engendered and fostered in disordered intellects. It is therefore a practice here, to send such subtle disputants, after having first bled them, to the madhouse, or bridewell, until their sound reason again returns. I thought to myself—Heaven and

earth! how would matters go in Europe with our theologians, who are every other day wrangling about the quality and attributes of the Deity; and concerning the nature of ghosts, and other similar mysterious secrets? How might it also go with our learned in the metaphysics, who, proud of their own transcendent proficiency in the speculative examination, believe, far above the conception of other folks, to approach the omniscience of the God-head? Verily I fear, that instead of acquiring a critic's celebrity, and attaining to the dignity of a doctor's cap, with which such erudites are crowned with us, they would here only pave themselves a way to the lunatic hospital, or the house of correction.

These, and many other of the like kind of absurdities and incongruities, I took notice of, during the period that I was at the seminary. At length the time arrived, which was appointed by the Prince for my being furnished with the testimonials from the instructors, and sent to the Court. I made sure account of receiving the warmest praise, and the most glittering commendation; grounding this hope, partly upon my own aptness, as I had learned the subterraneous language much sooner than I expected,—partly upon the friendship of my landlord,—and partly upon the proclaimed candour, and up-

rightness of my judges. At length my testimonials were brought to me. On opening them I trembled with joy ; eager to read, with my own eyes, the honour to which I had attained, and therefrom conjecture the good fortune that awaited me. But how much was I irritated and thrown into a state of despondency, when I had finished reading the document ; of which the following is a copy!—

“ Pursuant to the commands of your Serene Highness, we herewith forward the present animal ; which some time ago, was brought hither down to us from another globe ; and who calls himself, Man. We have, with diligent attention and solicitude, instructed the said animal in our Royal School ; where, after as rigid and precise an examination as was possible to be made of his understanding and conduct, we found him very tractable and ready at learning ; but of so wry and pitiful a penetration, that he, by reason of his too hasty conception, can hardly be classed among rational creatures ; much less be intrusted with any important employment. As he is, however, much nimbler-footed than most other of the inhabitants of this country, we humbly conceive, that he is exceedingly well qualified to fill the situation of Courier to the Court. Given under our hands, in the Thornmonth, at the Seminary in Keba, by your Serene

Highness' most obedient and most dutiful servants.

NEHEK.

JOKTAN.

RAPASI.

KILAK."

At this I went weeping to my landlord ; and supplicated him, with tears in my eyes, to obtain, through the means of his influence, a milder attestation from the *Karatti*; and I entreated him to show to them the testimonials I had received from the university of Copenhagen ; wherein I was represented as a very excellent and distinguished student. He observed to me, that my testimonials might be good enough in our country above ; where perhaps the shadow was more looked upon than the substance, and the rind more than the heart or marrow ; but with them, where things were estimated by their quintessence, or very kernels, such like documents were considered of no kind of worth. For the rest, he advised me to bear my fate with patience ; particularly as my character neither deserved reproof nor could be altered ; since it is reckoned here as one of the greatest of crimes, to praise any person for virtues which he never possessed. By way of pouring some soothing balsam into my wounds, and consoling me in the best



manner his ability would allow, he repeated to me the following words; the whole force of the truth whereof, penetrated deep into my heart.

Strive never after that, which is believ'd  
 By none but blind and silly mortals, to  
 Afford to him, whom only fools call great,  
 An inward gladness; and whose glitter is  
 Desir'd and envied by stupidity  
 Alone. Too oft, alas! is wisdom seen  
 To tower high upon the surgy wave  
 Of power; and like a ship, o'ertaken by  
 A storm, is driven from her course and wreck'd.  
 And he, who with high titles and with gold  
 Is heavy laden, gliding, as he thinks  
 Secure, through life, is oft oblig'd beneath  
 The pond'rous weight to crouch,—then sinks unto  
 The ground. And they who strive to heap up treasure,  
 And eager are to gain distinguish'd rank,  
 Like lofty pyramids their piles they build,  
 Towering high, near to the very clouds;  
 But transitory is this power of wealth,  
 And fleeting is the greatness of their name;  
 And they, while in the zenith of their pride,  
 Not thinking on what slipp'ry ground they stand,  
 Are oft-times, when perhaps they least expect,  
 Hurl'd headlong from their golden glory's summit.

He added, that a person, with a moderate share of good luck, had not, in a more humble station of life, such downfalls to apprehend. He insisted

that my testimonials from the *Karatti* were exactly what they ought to be ; and that these honest and upright judges, possessing such a power of penetration, who never suffered themselves to be bribed with presents, nor moved by threats, to swerve one iota from the path of truth, could not, in this case, be suspected of partiality. He told me at last, without any reserve, that he, himself, had, for a length of time, taken particular notice of my very weak discerning faculties ; and that, from my quick conceptions and fertile memory, he had instantly concluded, that I was by no means qualified for making any great spring towards pushing my fortune ; but, on the contrary, in consequence of my miserable judgment, I was totally unfit for any office of importance. He mentioned also, that he had made another discovery, on hearing my recitals respecting Europeans, that my native country must be

A very crazy land, envelop'd in thick fogs,

Where nought but fools are bred, as senseless as are hogs.

He assured me, however, in the most condescending and polite manner, that I might depend upon his friendship ; advising me, at the same time, to prepare myself, without delay, for setting out.

I followed this very good and reasonable man's advice. So much the more readily, as necessity

demanding it; and it appeared a foolhardihood to oppose the Prince's commands. I therefore set out on my journey in the company of a few small trees; who, at the same time with myself, were prepared at the seminary; and with a similar view were sent to the capital. Our guide was an old Karatti, or overseer; who rode upon an ox, as he was unable to walk, in consequence of his advanced age. Riding, in this country, is everywhere very unusual; and it is only decrepid old men, and sick persons, who make use of that convenience: although there would be much more excuse for the inhabitants of this planet being driven about in carriages, than for us; as they move so slow and with so much difficulty.

This brings to mind with what laughter the Subterraneans attended to the description I once gave them, respecting the costly equipages displayed among us: of our relays; our basket-work, and gilt gingerbread-looking carriages and boxes; in which we are oft packed together like pilchards in a cask, and driven about the town. And it calls, in particular, to my recollection, the time when I related to them, that in Europe, one neighbour could not visit another, without being enclosed in such a box or car; and in this manner, by two high-spirited animals, drawn through almost every street and lane

in the city: for no other earthly purpose, than a wish to display their outside finery.

In consequence of the very slow pace of these rational trees, we spent three days on the road, in travelling to the capital; although the distance from Keba is not more than twenty-eight miles. Had I been alone, I could easily have made the journey in a day.

How much soever I felt delighted, at being, beyond all comparison, nimbler a-foot than the Subterraneans, I, on the other hand, in an equal degree regretted, that my bodily perfection should procure me such a despicable employment. "I wish," said I to myself, "that I was just as awkward and as clumsy on my legs as the inhabitants of this planet; in order, through such a defect, to escape the slavish and abject office to which I am likely to be appointed." "Don't say so!" exclaimed our guide, who overheard me; "don't say so; for if nature had not, with that corporeal superiority, in some measure compensated for the imperfections of your mind, we should all have looked upon you as an incumbrance upon the face of the earth; since, by reason of your untimely quick conception, you only see the outside shell of any thing, without discovering its kernel; and as you

possess only two branches, you are much inferior to each of the Subterraneans, in ability to perform any handicraft, of whatsoever kind it might be." I listened to these words with much attention; and then thanked God for giving me my long legs; for without them, I should hardly have been reckoned among rational beings.

During our journey to the capital, I remarked, not however without astonishment, that not one of the inhabitants, as we passed by, remained stationary, in order to contemplate us; nor did any of them leave their work to gaze at a sight, which, howbeit, was not seen every day, so wholly intent were they upon their business. But as soon as the day was closed, and every one had performed his office, they amused themselves with all kinds of diversions, by permission of the magistrates; who look upon such like innocent amusements to be strengthening both to the mind and body, and equivalent to eating and drinking. For this and other reasons, the journey was exceedingly pleasant. The country, everywhere, afforded delightful and enchanting prospects. Let the reader only picture to himself, an amphitheatre as beautiful as Nature can form it, and he will then have some conception of the charming appearance of this subterraneous land. In some few tracts of country, where nature had been less

bountiful, the defect was compensated by art, and by the labour of the inhabitants. It is customary for the constituted authorities to set forth encouraging rewards, to be paid to those persons who cultivate, improve, and beautify their rural possessions; and, on the other hand, those against whom it is proved, that they have neglected the cultivation of their land, are, by an existing law, deprived of their burgher-right. We passed, in our way, through several handsome villages, which lay so near to one another, that they appeared to compose one very large town. Neatness and order everywhere prevailed. On the road we were often attacked by the wild baboons, which ran and frolicked on all sides of us in considerable numbers. They seemed particularly attached to springing upon, and tugging and pinching me; which arose, no doubt, in consequence of my very uncommon shape, and their mistaking me for one of their comrades. I was not able to conceal my wrath and indignation on this occasion; especially when I perceived that the sport afforded the trees that accompanied me, much matter for laughing at my expense; for I was conducted to the Court, pursuant to the Prince's commands, in the same dress I wore when I descended to the planet: holding the boat-hook in my right hand, that His Serene Highness might see the manner in which the peo-

ple on our globe are equipped and clothed; and to show the condition I was in, and the ornaments I possessed, when I was precipitated into his territory. I considered it fortunate that I had taken the boat-hook with me; for it came very opportunely, wherewith to drive away the audacious baboons, which flocked around me in troops: but it did not help me much; for the more I put them to flight, the more they returned; so that every minute, during the whole journey, I was obliged to hold myself in readiness to give the enemy battle.

## CHAPTER IV.

---

THE PRINCE'S COURT IN POTU.

---

AT length we arrived at Potu, the capital, which is a particularly magnificent and illustrious city. The houses in it are higher, and the streets are much broader, and more commodious than those in *Keba*. The first square or market-place that we came to, was filled with a multitude of traders or dealers; and it was entirely environed by the shops of artists and mechanics. I was much surprised to observe a criminal, with a rope round his neck, standing about the centre of the place, surrounded by a considerable number of very grave-looking trees, which appeared to be a circle of senators. When I inquired the signification of what I then beheld, and asked of what the culprit was guilty, to deserve hanging, which is contrary to usage, since no crime in that country is punished with the pain of death; I was answered, that he was a maker of projects, who had dared to advise the abolition of a certain



ancient custom. Those persons who surrounded him were senators, and others learned in the law; whose practice it was to examine and discuss the apparent merits of any new invention; which, if found to be well excogitated and devised, and likely to prove advantageous to the state, the malefactor is not only by them acquitted, but even rewarded for his ingenuity. Should it, on the contrary, however, be proved injurious to the state, or that the projector had only aimed at his own individual advantage, in proposing any change or alteration, the culprit, in that case, as a perturber and destroyer of the best interests of his country, is immediately tucked up without further ceremony. This summary way of proceeding has the effect of checking all factious and seditious disturbers of the public peace; so that very few persons dare venture to make any new proposition; every one being particularly cautious how he advises the repealing of any law, unless an advantage to the state is thereby so evident, that nobody can entertain a doubt of a successful result. The Subterraneans, everywhere, think very religiously of old laws; and the institutions and establishments of their ancestors are generally held very sacred; since they are of opinion, that a state, through perpetually altering its laws and regulations, according to the whimsical and fallacious notions of a few

individuals in power, must necessarily be weakened. Marry come up ! thought I to myself ; how would matters go with the project-makers on our globe ; who, under the pretence of exercising great economy, and introducing general retrenchment and frugality, tending to the prosperity of the country, are every other day meditating on new ordinances, laws, and regulations, solely for their own benefit ?

- We were at length conducted into a very large house, where all who are sent to the capital, from the general seminaries in the state, are admitted. From this place we were afterwards again conducted, in order to be presented to the Prince. Our guide, or Karatti, went in the mean time to announce our arrival ; and ordered us to remain here until he should return. Scarcely had he left us, when our ears were stunned by a most extraordinary noise, which resembled the acclamations usually expressed on an occasion of a victory ; and in an instant after, an alarm of drums and trumpets resounded through the whole building. On hearing this, we were struck with astonishment, and ran out into the street, to ascertain the occasion of it. We there beheld a tree advancing with solemn step, having on his head a garland of flowers, and followed by a splendid retinue ; and quickly after we discovered this to be the very

identical citizen, whom we had so recently seen standing in the centre of the market, with a rope round his neck.

The regulation which he, at the risk of his life, had proposed for consideration, was approved of and accepted; he therefore was now conducted in triumph through the whole city. But on what grounds he advised the repealing of the ancient law, I never knew; nor was I able by any means afterwards, because of the taciturnity of this people, to gain any knowledge of why the most trivial matter, which was debated in the senate, and concerned the administration of the affairs of state, should always be kept so secret from the commonalty. Things are managed, as every body is aware of, far better with us; where all state schemes and projects, as well as all decrees, ordinances, and statutes, are without delay related, reviewed, and judged of, in every ale-house, debating club, tavern, and coffee-house, throughout all the cities, towns, and villages in the empire.

After the lapse of an hour, the *Karatti* returned, and commanded us to follow him, which we immediately obeyed. On our way to the Prince, we were met by a multitude of small trees, who exposed for sale short printed historical accounts of every

thing that was remarkable and of any importance. Among this bibliothecal merchandize I cast my eye, with an intention of buying, upon a small work which had the following title: “ *A true and particular Account of the new and extraordinary Meteor, or Flying Dragon, which last Year made its first appearance in our Hemisphere.*” In this book there was a copper-plate print of myself; which represented me with the boat-hook in my right hand, and dragging the rope after me; exactly in the manner, in which I was carried round the planet. I had, on this occasion, much to do, to refrain from laughing very loud: exclaiming to myself inwardly ;

O sight of wonder ! unheard of venturous fool !

Thy glory still deserv'd a better graving-tool !

I then bought the book for three *kilak*, which are equivalent to about four skillings of our money, suppressed my risibility, and proceeded on in silence to the Prince's palace. This building displays much more of art and neatness, than a profusion of splendour and glitter. I observed very few courtiers or attendants about this residence ; at which I wondered, until I was informed that the Prince was a lover of frugality, and a professed enemy to all superfluity. Neither are there here, by far, so many persons in waiting necessary as at

our Courts ; for every tree possesses, in lieu of arms, such a number of branches, that they are able to perform all kinds of handiwork, attendance, and domestic affairs, in one third, or a quarter of the time, that is required for the same labour being done with us.

It was mid-day when we reached the palace. Before His Serene Highness sat down to dinner, he desired to speak with me apart from the other candidates ; I was therefore conducted alone into the dining-room. I must here remark, that in this Prince are found united, courteousness, amiability, and seriousness, to a degree worthy of admiration. His vivacity, benignity, and softness of disposition, are so natural to him, that no vexation, or anguish of mind, can obscure, or cast a gloom upon his cheerful countenance. As soon as I was in his presence I fell on my knees ; at which all the persons around me appeared greatly to wonder. His Serene Highness inquired wherefore I knelt : and when I had stated to him my reason for so doing, he commanded me to rise ; saying, that such like adoration was due only to the Deity : and that obedience, labour, and diligence, were sufficient recommendations to his good graces. When I was again on my feet, he interrogated me a good deal respecting the manner of my descent ; what was the

motive of my voyage down; what my name was; and where I was born and bred. I answered him—

My name is Klim, and from a mighty world  
Above I came, which is my native sphere;  
I walk'd not, sail'd not, row'd not, but was hurl'd  
Down headlong through a hole—thus came I here.

He inquired further, what adventures I had met with on my voyage down; and was desirous of knowing something respecting the manners and customs of our globe. I expatiated with much warmth on the intellect and virtues of man; and on the morals, good-breeding, and other accomplishments, of which mankind in general are accustomed to pride themselves. But he was quite indifferent at the recital; and even yawned at several circumstances, which I conceived the most likely to excite his admiration. Alas! thought I, such and so various are the tastes of men! that which is the most charming and agreeable to us, awakens in this people nothing but disgust and nausea. What appeared to grate the most on his princely ear, was that which I related to him concerning our method of pleading causes at the bar; respecting the eloquence of our barristers; and the alacrity of our judges in deciding questions, and pronouncing verdicts. I endeavoured to set the

matter before him in a more favourable light ; but he interrupted me, and changed the subject of the discourse, by interrogating me regarding our religion and ecclesiastical tenets. I recited to him briefly all our articles of belief. Whilst I was repeating these before him, the wrinkles in his nose disappeared by degrees : he admitted that he could willingly subscribe to every one of them ; and only wondered that people without judgment should have such sound and accurate conceptions regarding the Deity and his adoration. But being informed that the Christians were divided into innumerable sects, and because of this diversity in their belief, it was not unusual for them to persecute, and even to murder one another, he said—“ With us there is also a diversity and a dissimilarity of opinions, regarding the things which appertain to the worship of the Divinity ; but the people, for that reason, do not persecute one another : for every persecution on account of thoughts and opinions, or errors, which are founded merely upon a difference of conception, has its origin entirely in pride ; since one person foolishly imagines, that he is able to see deeper into matters of religion than another—an arrogance which cannot be otherwise than offensive to the Almighty, who is a lover of modesty and humility. We punish no person here, who, in his credulity, strays from the path of general opinion in specu-

lative matters, provided he swerve not practically from the public worship of the Deity; and in this I follow the example of my predecessors; who considered it both cruel and tyrannical, to fetter the imaginative faculty of rational beings, and to domineer over their consciences. I carefully observe," said he, "the same rule in respect to my government. It is quite indifferent to me, whether my subjects have various opinions regarding my form and appearance, and my way of living, domestic arrangements, and such like matters; provided they only acknowledge me as their lawful sovereign or director, to whose decrees and ordinances they owe obedience. When that is the case, I look upon them all as faithful subjects and good citizens."

"Illustrious Prince!" answered I, "that is called with us *syncretismus*; and is in particular most powerfully opposed by our men of letters." I had neither time nor opportunity of saying another word, for he seemed somewhat displeased; and in going abruptly away, commanded me to remain till the dinner was over.

At the table sat the Prince, the Princess, the young Prince, their son, and the *Kadok*, or Lord Chancellor. This *Kadok*, through his polite manners, courteous address, and still more acute under-



standing, had acquired in Potu an extraordinary renown. In the course of twenty years, he had never in the senate pronounced a verdict, which did not meet with the full concurrence and approbation of all the other judges. He had never, in public matters, made any order which was not inviolable; and his word was a lasting rule or law. His powers of conception were, however, so slow, that he always required fourteen days, at least, for making a draught of the most trivial order or statute. In case this personage had lived on our globe, where all tardiness and delay acquire the appellation of incapacity, and even laziness, he would have been absolutely condemned as entirely unfit for any occupation of importance. But as soon as he had conceived an affair, he penetrated immediately to the bottom of it; and he never decided any matter, until it had undergone the most minute and scrupulous investigation. In short, it might be fairly asserted, that he performed more than ten other so-called great geniuses, who with too much precipitancy discharge the duties of their office; and whose labours, for that reason, always require to be corrected, altered, and polished, for so long a time, that it is at last evident, when their hours of attendance are over, that there is nothing indeed free from error which they have attempted to perform: or rather, they have neither done nor accom-

plished any thing. I remember, among other choice apophthegms at the Court in Potu, one as very remarkable, which likens this sort of people, who too hastily meddle in, and with too much temerity decide upon, matters, to lazy walkers ; who go to and fro the same road, without advancing one step farther.

As soon as their Serene Highnesses were seated at the table, there entered a young damsel of eight branches ; who brought in, at once, so many plates and dishes, that the whole table was instantly covered. To her followed immediately another tree with eight bottles, containing cider, perry, and other potent juices. This tree possessed nine branches, and was, in consequence, looked upon as the most excellent attendant that could be desired. In this manner, two persons-in-waiting performed easily that which at our Courts a whole host of servants would scarcely have been able to effect so well. The dishes were taken away with the same alertness and dexterity as they were brought with and placed upon the table. The meal was frugal, but at the same time neat and clean. Of the different dishes that were set before the Prince, he tasted only one, which was that that was the most to his palate. Just the contrary is the fashion among the rich with us ; for they consider a dinner

as nothing, unless it be composed of a number of courses, one following the other, and each more sumptuous and dainty than the former. During the repast, they entertained themselves with various dialogues on virtues, vices, politics, and ethics; remarking that the enjoyments of the body were seasoned with those of the soul. I became also the subject of conversation; but because of my too quick conception, it was thought that nothing very particular could be made of me.

When the dinner was over, and the table cleared, the Prince then ordered me to deliver my testimonials. When His Serene Highness had read the document through, he cast his eyes down as if to examine the length of my legs:—"The Karatti have judged perfectly right!" said he,—and commanded that their advice should be followed. On hearing him pronounce these words, I was struck as though it were with lightning, and immediately burst into a flood of tears. I entreated that my book of exercises might be looked through; hoping that when my virtues and the faculties of my mind had undergone a more close and rigid examination, that a milder doom would await me. This benign, and extremely just and reasonable Prince, was by no means angry at this unmanerly and extraordinary request; but commanded the Karatti who was

present to examine me anew, with more exactness and precision. While this was going on, the Prince withdrew, for the purpose of reading over the testimonials of the other candidates. My Karatti again interrogated me, and propounded to me several new questions and problems ; which I answered and solved, to his utter astonishment, with my usual presence of mind and alacrity. “ You conceive,” said he, “ a proposition very quickly ; but you are not able to penetrate to the foundation of anything ; and your answers prove, that you have more promptly conceived, than correctly and thoroughly understood the nature of the problems.” When the examination was finished, he entered the room to which the Prince had some time before withdrawn, and returned shortly after with the following sentence :—That as I had acted both in a vile and an imprudent manner, in calling the once-pronounced judgment of the Karatti into doubt, I had thereby, pursuant to the law, which awards a punishment to all foolhardy backbiters, and is expressed in the third lesser of the fourth greater degradation, (by greater and lesser degradations, or *Skibal* and *Kibal*, are understood books and chapters,) incurred the penalty of being phlebotomised, according to an ancient practice and usage, in both my branches, or arms, and put into the public prison of the city. The words of the

law in the third chapter of the fourth book are these---*spik, antri, flak, slak, mak, tabu mihalat silak*. Although the meaning of these words was as clear as noon-day—and the sacredness of the law admits of no exemption or reserve—His Serene Highness, in his peculiar graciousness and clemency, had determined on pardoning me this enormous crime ; partly in consequence of my want of judgment, and partly because of my ignorance of the laws ; since, without exactly breaking them, he considered, that a newly-arrived foreigner might be forgiven that offence, rather than any other, for which the punishment could not be possibly remitted. Finally, in order to give me a still greater proof of condescension and benevolence, it had graciously pleased His Serene Highness to appoint me as one of his regular messengers or runners to the Court ; with which kind favour and beneficence, for that time, I was obliged to content myself.

After this sentence had been announced to me, a *Kiva*, or Secretary, was immediately sent for ; who entered my name, together with those of the other newly-arrived candidates, in the protocol or register of promotions. This secretary was a male tree, of a dignified and admirable exterior appearance, for he possessed no less than eleven branches ; and was able, in consequence, with the same facility,

to write eleven letters at once, that any of us would find in writing only one. His discerning faculty was, however, but very moderate ; for which reason he could not be promoted ; and was grown old in the office that he then held, and which he had already filled for the space of thirty years. It was with this secretary that I had afterwards the most to do, and on whom I had very frequently to wait ; for it was he who transcribed all the ordinances and letters, which I, in the capacity of courier, was obliged to take to different parts of the country. I was often struck with astonishment to see with what activity and alertness he performed his work ; as he frequently wrote eleven copies at the same time, and affixed to them at once as many seals. It is always considered, in every family, as an extremely lucky event, whenever a child is born with many branches ; for that reason, it is a customary thing for the lying-in woman, after a safe delivery, to send word to her neighbours and acquaintances, informing them of the number of branches with which the infant is blessed, on being ushered into the world. It was very generally reported, that this secretary's father, when born, possessed no less than twelve branches ; and that the whole family was distinguished for its uncommon number. As soon as I had received my appointment, and was initiated and reckoned among

the regular messengers to the Court, I retired to bed ; but, although my limbs were very weary, I in vain tried, during the greatest part of the night, to close my eyes in soft and refreshing sleep.

The idea of the abject employment to which I was doomed, hovered continually before my mind ; and it appeared to me extremely unbecoming, and even disgraceful, for a *ministerii candidatus* and *baccalaureus* in the greater world, to be degraded to a pitiful messenger in the lesser. I spent the most part of the night in these afflicting meditations ; and, in my despair, read and re-read the testimonials I had received from the University of Copenhagen. I have before remarked, that there is hardly any difference between the days and nights, in respect of light ; the reader will therefore easily conceive, that I experienced no difficulty in seeing them. Exhausted with a variety of unpleasant thoughts and weighty troubles, I fell at length into a profound sleep ; during which I had several dreams. I dreamt at one time that I was at home among my friends, and was relating to them my adventures in the subterraneous world ; then again I thought that I was sailing in the air, and engaged in a sanguinary conflict with the furious bird of prey, or griffin ; which gave me so much work to do, that the violence of the combat broke entirely my

sleep. But how was I terrified on awaking, and casting my eyes on a hideous and huge baboon, which was lying by my side! This frightful beast had slunk in at the chamber-door, which was not carefully shut, and for warmth had crept upon the bed. This unexpected phenomenon filled me with so much anxiety and terror, that, with a loud shriek, which resounded through the house, I screamed out for help. Some small trees, who slept in other rooms adjoining and contiguous to mine, were awakened by my noise, and came immediately to my assistance: they helped me to combat this unpleasant intruder, which we forced at length to make a precipitate retreat. I learnt afterwards, that the Prince laughed heartily on hearing of this adventure; but in order that I might not be again exposed to a similar encounter, he commanded that I should be immediately clothed after the subterraneous fashion, and decorated with branches. The European dress, in which I had descended, was taken from me; and on account of its uncommon shape, and appearance altogether, was hung up in the Cabinet of Arts, with this inscription over it:—

“ THE DRESS OF THE BEING OF THE UPPER WORLD.”

Odzookers! thought I, on this occasion, what would be the consequence, if Jens Andersen, master-



tailor, of Bergen, the stitcher of these clothes, were to know that his work was preserved, among other curiosities and rarities, in the Subterraneous Cabinet of Arts? He would certainly bridle up, and strut, and cry gobble, like a turkey-cock, and would cast a contemptuous look both at the Burgher Master and the Sheriff.

After the adventure with the baboon, I could not close my eyes again the whole night; and when the sun rose, I rose with him, and entered on my new running occupation.

I was sent immediately on innumerable errands. And first I was ordered to deliver at the large and small towns, which were scattered about in different directions, some ordinances and letters-patent: in short I was a perfect *perpetuum mobile*. In taking these journeys, I had the opportunity of studying more attentively the character of this nation; and discovered, in the greatest part of the inhabitants, an affability and elegance of manners, united with so much prudence, as rendered them truly worthy of admiration. The citizens of the town called *Maholki*, who are altogether thorns, appeared alone to be less refined in manners, and advanced in knowledge, than the generality of the Subterraneans.

Each province has its peculiar trees, or inhabitants, which in particular is observable among the peasantry in the country, where all are indigenous; contrary to what is the case in the large towns, and particularly in the metropolis, where there is a mixture of all sorts of trees. The surmise which I had formed regarding the sagacity of the Potuites, was the more confirmed, the more accurately I acquired a knowledge of their good qualities. The laws and customs, whereat I felt the most disgust, obtained by degrees, as I had a greater insight into the justice and equity of them, my fullest approbation; and my ungrounded contempt was changed into well-grounded admiration. I could easily enumerate, one by one, the regulations and customs, which I, on so slight a view, had considered extravagant; but which I, on a more mature reflection, had looked upon as well-founded and judicious. Of some thousands, I will merely cite one single example; which will paint, in striking and lively colours, this people's true character. A certain learned philologist solicited the appointment to the vacant rectorship in one of the public schools in the principality. His application was supported by a recommendation from the burghers of *Nahami*; who attested that the candidate had lived peaceably for the space of four

successive years, with a dissolute, libidinous, and unfaithful wife ; and, during the whole of that time, had borne his horns with unexampled patience. The attestation was nearly of the following tenor :—

“ Whereas the reverend and erudite presenter hereof, *Joktan Hu*, has requested from us an attestation, touching his manner of living and conduct in general. We, therefore, the undersigned burghers and householders, in that section of the city called *Posko*, do hereby certify, that the said reverend and erudite man aforesaid, hath, during the space of four successive years, lived in a state of peace and quiet, with a meretricious, dissolute, and faithless wife ; hath borne his horns with patience ; and exhibited so much mildness and gentleness of disposition, whilst enduring so great an evil, that we consider him perfectly worthy of filling the vacant rectorship : provided in all respects, that his learning be proportionate to his good conduct.—*Nahami*, the tenth day of the Palm-month, in the year three thousand after the great flood.”

To this attestation was annexed a testimonial from the *Karatti* of the Seminary in which he had been educated, in proof of his learning and scientific erudition ; which document appeared to be of great moment : but what merit is due to a cornuted

schoolman, before other instructors, I must avow I am entirely ignorant of. The purport of this odd kind of attestation was this : among other qualities which an instructor must necessarily possess, mildness of disposition is one of the most important ; for, unless he be armed with an iron patience, he will, in despite of his entire stock of knowledge, be very unfit for a schoolman's employment, which ought to be exercised without too much severity and coercion ; in order, by a system of reasoning, in lieu of unseasonable abuse and beating, that a new method of managing children be adopted, whereby their obstinacy may be corrected and their stubbornness mollified. As no surer proofs of a mildness of disposition could be adduced, than the firmness of heart with which he had borne up against so considerable a domestic evil and daily plague, his neighbours had not been scrupulous in recommending him on that ground ; in order, by such means, to set in its true light all that might be expected from a schoolman, who, in this respect, had so particularly distinguished himself from all others.

It was said that the Prince nearly died of laughing at this extraordinary recommendation ; but that he, nevertheless, when he discovered, on reflection, that it was less objectionable than he, in the begin-

ning, had looked upon it to be, presented the vacant rectorship to the petitioner.

He performed the duties of his office, according to every one's acknowledgment, with so much propriety and satisfaction, and proved so clearly how children were to be managed by mild and soft measures, that he was looked upon more as a father than a severe disciplinarian. The scholars showed so much diligence in their studies, under the direction of this gentle, pious, and amiable teacher, that, from that day to this, very few schools are to be found in this principality, whence every year so many distinguished, learned, and virtuous trees are discharged as from this.

As I had many opportunities, during the four years that I was a messenger, of observing, with some degree of accuracy, the state of the country, the condition, habits, and manner of life, of the inhabitants, I conceive that it will not be unacceptable to the reader, to find hereafter something mentioned, which shall wholly have reference to their police, religion, laws, and sciences; regarding which, I have heretofore merely thrown out some few hints.

## CHAPTER V.

---

### ON THE STATE OF THE COUNTRY OF POTU, AND THE PEOPLE'S WAY OF THINKING.

---

THE principality of Potu is confined within very narrow limits, and occupies only a small place upon this globe. The whole planet Nazar contains not more than one thousand to twelve hundred miles in circumference. A person may easily perambulate it without the help of a guide or interpreter, for the same language is spoken throughout every part; although the inhabitants of Potu differ so widely from those of the other states and provinces, in knowledge and manners. Like the Europeans on our globe, the Potuites have precedence of every other nation; and after the same manner, they are more renowned for their virtue and understanding than any other people. Upon the high roads are placed, at certain distances, stone pillars, which show the miles; and to these pillars are fixed pro-

jecting hands, or other marks, which point out the way to every market-town and village; for the whole principality abounds with villages and magnificent towns. But what I consider here as very remarkable, nay very wonderful, is, that all the inhabitants upon this planet speak one universal language; although every individual nation differs so exceedingly from the rest in condition, customs, manners, knowledge, and endowments of nature. In this respect, the subterraneous planet is a lively picture of the variety in nature, which cannot fail to charm and enrapture the travelling spectator.

The land is divided by great and small waters; in which ships are navigated with the help of oars, which are exercised, as one may say, by a magic power; for they are not, like our oars, plied by human hands, but by very ingenious self-moving machines. The disposition and ingenuity of these admirable machines I am not able to explain, as I am but very little versed in mathematics. Independent of that, these trees are so acute and so clever in all their inventions, that unless a person possess the eyes of an Argus, and an almost divine understanding, he cannot discover the principle on which they are contrived.

Their planet, like our earth, has a twofold

motion, so that the time with them, as it is with us, is divided into day and night, spring and summer, autumn and winter ; and those places which are situated nearest to the Poles, are colder than the others. But in respect of the light, for the reason already mentioned, there is scarcely any difference betwixt day and night. Nay, it may be truly said, that the night is more agreeable than the day ; for nothing can be imagined more glittering and dazzling than the light of the sun, which is reflected from the solid hemisphere, that resembles an excessively large moon covering the whole celestial vault. The inhabitants consist of sundry sorts of trees ; as oaks, limes, poplars, and palm-trees, thorns, and such like ; whence the six months, into which the subterraneous year is divided, derive their names. Every sixteenth month the planet Nazar returns to the place whence it set out ; but not on any fixed day, on account of the inequality of its motion ; for this planet, like our moon, through the variety of its motions, jostles against, and breaks the heads of all, those who reside in the firmament. Their chronologies are various, and are determined by the most remarkable events ; especially by the appearance of a great comet, which, according to their opinions, three thousand years before, occasioned a general deluge ; in which all the generations of the trees, together with the



other remaining animals, were drowned ; some few excepted, that were fortunate enough to save themselves upon high hills, and the tops of mountains, from the universal inundation ; and from these are descended the present inhabitants.

This land abounds in grain, herbs, and all sorts of vegetables ; and produces nearly the same fruit as we find in our Europe ; but it yields no oats, which is a matter of little consequence, for they are here not wanted, as on this planet there are no horses. The seas and lakes yield excellent fish, and their margins are studded with the most beautiful country seats and villas—sometimes in connected rows, and then again scattered at different distances in the most charming variety. The common beverage of the inhabitants is prepared from certain herbs, which grow green, and may be gathered all the year round. Those persons who sell this beverage, are generally called *Minhalpi*, that is, herb-brewers. They are limited to a certain number in each town, and have, exclusively, the privilege of decocting these herbs. Those who have obtained this licence are not allowed to follow any other employment, trade, or profession. All persons holding public situations, and receiving salaries, are particularly prohibited from engaging in this branch of commerce ; for it is thought, that, on ac-

count of their credit and influence in the town, they would have it in their power to monopolize all the custom ; and by means of the advantages which they enjoy in the state, they could afford to dispose of their merchandise at a lower price than other people. This we too frequently observe to be the case in our world ; where men in office, and others receiving public pay, quickly enrich themselves by such means and practices, to the great injury of the merchant and the fair trader.

There exists on this planet a very beneficial law regarding the procreation of children, which tends greatly to promote populosity. It augments and decreases the immunities and advantages which a man has in the state, according to the number of children whereof he is the father. In this wise, he who is the parent of six children, is exempt from all ordinary and extraordinary taxes. Therefore the begetting of children, and having a numerous progeny, is not less beneficial in the subterraneous world, than it is injurious and burdensome upon our globe, where it is customary to lay a poll-tax upon all infants.

In the subterraneous world, no person can hold two situations at the same time ; for it is thought that a man has always enough to do in performing

correctly the duties of one office. For that reason, public business is managed—under favour of the inhabitants of our globe be it spoken—much better here than with us. This law and regulation is attended to so strictly, that a physician never studies the whole science of medicine at once; but confines himself to the acquiring an accurate knowledge of the nature of one single disease; and a musician never learns to play on more than one instrument. Things are ordered quite otherwise in our world, where these various avocations prove hurtful to a man's nature; make him peevish, capitious, and negligent in his occupations; and where, through a desire of being skilled in every thing, he, in truth, is skilled in nothing. If a physician were to undertake, at the same time, to cure a disease in the human body as well as in the body politic, he would prove himself a bungler in both, and would effect neither; and if a musician were to set himself up for a virtuoso and a senator, what could one expect from him but insipidity and discords? We are apt to admire those who venture to undertake several employments at the same time; who intrude themselves into the most important affairs, and are presumptuous enough to think themselves fit for any situation. This, which is caused by their temerity and slender knowledge of their own abilities, we are so foolish as to admire; for if they knew

the importance of the office, and their own incapacity to direct it, they would not only decline accepting these situations, when offered, but would tremble even on hearing them merely named. In the subterraneous world, no person undertakes an employment, which he is not fully competent to perform. I recollect that I once heard the great philosopher *Rakbasi* speak on the subject in these words:—"Every person ought to know his own talents, and rigidly judge of his own fitness and defects. If we do not, then stage-players show more understanding than we ; for they choose, not the best parts, but such parts as they can best perform. Shall, then, stage-players surpass us in knowledge?"

The inhabitants of this principality are not divided, as with us, into two classes, nobles and commoners. In former times that was the case: but when the Prince observed that this distinction gave rise to a great deal of dissension, he wisely abrogated the custom of precedence which was claimed as a birth-right; so that at present every tree is honoured and esteemed solely for his virtues, services, and industry. On this head I will enlarge at a future opportunity. The only precedence which birth can now give, is many branches. A child is favoured and respected in

proportion as it possesses many or few of these ; for the greater the number of branches, the more is the tree fit for every kind of labour. I have before hinted something regarding the natural endowments and manners of the Subterraneans, to which I shall, in a future chapter, again draw the attention of the reader.

## CHAPTER VI.

---

### ON THE RELIGION OF THE POTUITES.

---

THE system of religion in Potu consists in only a few chapters, and their whole profession of faith is not much greater than our Apostolic creed. It is here forbidden, under pain of being banished to the firmament, to expound the sacred writings; and if any person venture to dispute concerning the essence and attributes of the Divinity, and about the nature of ghosts, the soul, and such spiritual matters, he is sentenced to be immediately phlebotomized, and put into the public hospital, or mad-house of the town: "For it is perfectly absurd and preposterous," say they, "for us to attempt to describe and define that, wherein our understanding and comprehension are as blind as an owlet in the sun-shine." They are all united and agreed in the adoration and worship of one Supreme Being, whose omnipotence has created, and whose provi-

dence keeps and preserves, all things. Respecting the form of worshipping this Being, every one is allowed to think and act as he will ; but those who openly attack the established religion of the state, are punished as public disturbers of the peace. I, for that reason, enjoyed a perfect freedom of thought, and no one persecuted me on account of my religion.

The Potuites pray very seldom ; but when they do, it is with such fervent devotion, that one might imagine them in rapture ; so long are their prayers. I told them that with us it was customary to pray and sing divine songs and hymns, while managing our domestic concerns, and performing our daily labour ; but this they reprobated. “ An earthly Prince,” said they, “ would take it very much amiss, if a person who came to solicit a favour of him, were, in his presence, to commence brushing his clothes, and combing and dressing his hair.” They seemed to have in no wise more relish for our divine songs : since they considered it ridiculous for any one to display his penitence, contrition, and afflictive remorse, in musical notes ; as the wrath of the Deity is not to be appeased by a few trills and quavers, and by the sound of a few trumpets and flutes ; but by sighs, and tears, and lamentations. These, and other similar observations, I

could not hearken to without displeasure ; and the greater was it, in consequence of my father, of blessed memory, who was once the parish-clerk and chorister, having, with his own hands, set several psalms to music, which were still sung in the church ; and also because I had proposed to myself to solicit the first clerkship that became vacant. I endeavoured, however, to suppress my indignation ; for these Subterraneans maintain their opinions with so much acuteness, and give to all they say such a power of plausibility, that it is difficult to confute even their grossest errors. They have still more extraordinary opinions on matters of religion ; which they understand just as artfully and ingeniously how to defend. When I, for example, remarked to several of them, with whom I was on terms of friendship, that they could not expect to be happy in a future state, because they wandered in the dark ways of ignorance ; they replied, that he who with too much severity and harshness judged the conduct of others, ran great risk of being judged himself ; for no person could condemn another, unless from pride and arrogance ; which are vices that God, who is a lover of humility, detests and abominates in his creatures : besides, to condemn the opinions of other people, and to obtrude our own, is to fancy, like madmen, that we have engrossed all the knowledge,



and that nobody on earth has a claim to wisdom but ourselves.

I was once desirous of proving a position ; and advanced such an opinion, and adduced such arguments, as I in my conscience felt convinced were well-grounded. My opponent commended both my arguments and proof, and advised me always to believe the evidence of my own conscience, which was a maxim that he himself would never swerve from ; for if every body were to follow the dictates of his own conscience, all disputes, and motives for disputes, would soon cease.

Among other errors, into which the inhabitants of this principality had fallen, were the following :— Although they did not deny that God rewarded the good and punished the wicked, they were nevertheless of opinion, that the justice of rewards and punishments was not exercised but in a future state. I cited several people who had been punished in this life for their wickedness and impiety. In proof against this objection, they cited just as many ungodly trees, who had been extremely fortunate until their death. “ Whenever we have to contend with any opponent,” said they, “ we supply ourselves with arms alone from the armory of ordinary life, being such as we are able to make use of ; and

we observe only those instances which serve to confirm our positions: taking care always to omit such as are injurious to, or militate against us. I cited myself then as a living evidence of facts, that several persons, who had done me much wrong, had died a miserable death. But that was entirely self-love, they answered; and was the cause of my looking upon myself as better, and of greater importance, in the eyes of the Deity, than other people, who had suffered the most unparalleled injuries, and yet saw their persecutors live to a good old age, and witnessed their being always fortunate.

On my once exhorting them to pray daily to God, they replied, that they did not deny the necessity of prayers; but still they conceived, that the true worship of the Almighty consisted in obeying his ordinances. The simile which they advanced in illustration and proof of their opinions, was the following:—Suppose a Prince had two kinds of subjects; and that the one kind, either through weakness, human frailty, or from wickedness, transgressed his commands every day; yet these people were hourly coming, one or the other, to the Prince's palace, with solicitations and deprecations, and begging pardon for the faults and crimes they had committed, and which they were

desirous of committing anew. The other kind came very seldom, or never, on their own accord, to the Court; but followed and executed faithfully and exactly the Prince's commands; and in so doing, paid him all the honour and obedience, which they as good subjects were indebted to him. Can any one now doubt, which the Prince would look upon as men, and deserving of his favour; and which, on the other hand, he would consider as bad, useless, and troublesome subjects, and condemn, as well on account of their innumerable vices and errors, as their continual importunities?

I frequently involved myself in these and similar controversies, but arguments were always fruitless; for I found it impossible to bring any one over to my way of thinking. I shall therefore skip over a great number, and confine myself to quoting merely the principal and most remarkable dogmas of their religion; leaving it to the reader's own judgment to approve of, or condemn, them as he may think fit.

The Potuites believe in only one true and omnipotent God, the maker and upholder of all things. They prove his omnipotence and unity, by the immensity, order, disposition, and harmony of the creation; and as they are profoundly skilled in

natural philosophy and astronomy, they have such clear and exalted conceptions of the essence and attributes of the Divinity, that they consider it as absurd for any one to attempt to define, what so infinitely exceeds his power of comprehension. They have but five festivals in the whole year ; the first of which is celebrated with great devotion, in pitch-dark places, into which no ray of light can possibly intrude ; in order thereby to signify, that the Being which they worship is incomprehensible. In these places they remain immoveable and rapt in divine adoration, from sun-rise to sun-set. This feast is called *The Day of the Incomprehensible God*, and happens on the first day of the Oak-month. On the other four festivals, which are celebrated in the four seasons of the year, they return thanks to God for all the kind beneficence which he has shown them. It is very rare that any person stays away from these religious assemblies ; and he who neglects to attend them, without very cogent reasons for his absence, is looked upon as a bad subject, and is held by every body in the utmost contempt. Their public prayers are so composed, that they have no relation to the supPLICATOR, but merely to the prosperity of the Prince and of the state. No one prays publicly for himself. This regulation is intended to signify, that the welfare of every individual is so closely con-

nected with the well-being of all, that it is not possible for the one to exist without the other. No person is obliged under any penalty to attend public worship ; for it is considered that piety consists principally in charity ; and experience teaches us, that virtue is more liable to be cooled by compulsory measures, than warmed ; therefore they look upon it to be not only useless, but also hurtful, to coerce any person by main force to the worship of God. A man, said they, who desired mutual love from his wife, and undertook, by means of boxes on the ear and fillips on the nose, to chase away her coolness, would, instead of lighting up the last spark of affection still remaining in her bosom, entirely extinguish it ; and her indifference would verge into hatred and dislike.

The Potuites, in former times, sought to appease the wrath of the Godhead with offerings, splendid processions, and other ceremonies. This external worship of the Deity endured till the renowned philosopher *Cimali*, about eight hundred years ago, stood forward as the reformer of the religion ; and published a book called *Sebolac-tacsi*, or, *the True Remarks of a Religious Tree*. This book I read very sedulously to the end ; and considered it a work of which I should never be weary. It contains theological dogmas and moral maxims,

which the Potuites learn by heart. The subterraneous reformer abolishes the offerings and such like customs, upon the following grounds.—Those virtues, says he, are only real virtues, whereof the practice is troublesome and difficult to the corrupt heart. To make offerings, to sing psalms, to keep every other day sacred, in honour of the ashes of the dead, and to walk in procession with the effigies of saints, partake much more of the nature of devout idleness than of spiritual business: if such may be called spiritual business, which every vicious-minded person can readily exercise, without its costing him the least self-denial. But he who endeavours with all his means to relieve the indigent, to govern his temper, and subdue his revengefulness; who combats manfully against all concupiscence and lust, and strives with all his might to curb his darling passions,—exhibits alone the true sign of virtue and the fear of God. A splendid uniform, and glittering arms, are marks which distinguish the warrior from the man in trade: but the hero is always known by his bravery and valour; and by his patient suffering, unreluctant toils, and sacrifice of life and limbs, for his beloved father-land.” With such like examples, *Cimali* has endeavoured to strengthen his precepts; and as the Potuites observe them very strictly, the converters, or the so-called missionaries, of the

Romish Church, who enjoin so much the observance of ceremonies, and promise paradise to all who worship relics and images, or during forty days glut and satiate themselves with the dainties and delicacies of the fields, vineyards, seas, oceans, and rivers, would lose both their time and labour among a people like this.

These are the theological tenets of the Potuites ; which will, no doubt, strike some of my readers, as it struck me from the beginning, that this is the clear, pure, and unmystified religion of nature. These people, however, affirm and insist that this knowledge and doctrine were divinely revealed to them ; and that they, some hundreds of years before, had received a book, wherein was written, and which still teaches them, all they should believe and do. In the earliest times, said they, their forefathers believed in, and were contented with, the plain and simple religion of nature : but as experience had taught them, that the clear light of nature was not sufficient to illumine the darkness of a world of people ; since the moral feelings of some were not unfrequently paralyzed by slothfulness, indolence, and supineness ; and the conceptions of others, by a keen and subtle philosophy, and through unbridled reveries and speculations, were too often blunted and perverted ;—the Almighty had

given them a written revelation; the necessity whereof appeared to them indubitable.

Although there appeared a great deal in the theology of the Potuites to which I could not conscientiously subscribe, yet I must candidly and frankly acknowledge, that there was much whereto I could not refuse my complete assent. What seemed to me, for example, not only to deserve approbation, but also to be worthy of admiration, was the custom which they, in the time of war, observed on returning home victorious from a battle, —that instead of breaking out, as we do, into loud acclamations, and singing *Te Deum*, they passed several days in mournful silence; as if they reproached themselves, and were ashamed of a victory which had cost so many of their brethren and fellow-creatures their lives. For this reason, there is very little mentioned about battles, massacres, and bloodshed, in the subterraneous histories and annals; they being chiefly filled with civil matters, ordinances, laws, and institutions.



## CHAPTER VII.

---

THE CONSTITUTION OF POTU.

---

IN the principality of Potu, the government is hereditary in a right line. It has been so for some thousands of years, and it still continues to go on in the same way. It is only to be found once in the annals, that the Potuites altered this regulation in the hereditary succession; for as sound reason seemed to demand that the Regent should surpass his subjects in understanding and talents, many were of opinion, that more regard ought to be paid to the qualities of the mind, than to precedence by birth, and that he who eminently possessed the former deserved to be elected as Regent. For this reason, they abrogated the ancient hereditary succession, and appointed, without a dissentient voice, the philosopher *Rabaku* as their Prince. He reigned, in the beginning, with so much prudence and mildness, that he might have served as

a pattern to all regents. This continued, however, not long; and the Potuites perceived too late, how unfounded is the proverb, which says, that a state is fortunate that has a philosopher at the helm of affairs. For as the new Prince was of low extraction, his virtues and art of governing were not sufficient to procure him that honour and respect which constitute the strength of a state. Those persons who had lately been his equals or superiors, notwithstanding his accession to the throne, still looked upon him in the same light; and for that reason they refused to obey him as their Prince. They murmured at his ordinances, because they were, in some measure, troublesome to them; and they then reflected only on what he had been, and not on what he was. He endeavoured, by means of prayers and adulation, to procure obedience from them, but with these he effected nothing. His commands continued still to be treated with contempt, because his person was not esteemed. *Rabaku* perceived that other means must be resorted to, and began to adopt rigorous measures. By reason of his flying to the other extremity, the spark which had for some time been smouldering in the ashes, now broke into an ardent flame. His subjects openly opposed him, and one ill-suppressed insurrection was followed by another. At length he observed that the state could not possibly subsist,

unless it were governed by a Regent who was of a noble family, and the memory of whose ancestors might infuse into the minds of the people sentiments of respect and submission; he therefore resigned the government, and transferred the regal power to a Prince whose birth entitled him to possess it. Tranquillity returned with the ancient royal family, and the tempest, which had so long convulsed the state, was now appeased. Thereupon it was forbidden, from thenceforth, under pain of death, to make the least change in the hereditary succession.

This form of direct line will, in all probability, remain for ever inviolate in Potu; so that unless it be a case of the utmost necessity, primogeniture will not be excluded. The annals, however, make mention of a philosopher, who attempted to repeal this royal law, and devised a medium. His proposition was, that the royal family should not be excluded; but that he, from among the sons of the deceased Prince, should be elected Regent, who exhibited the most fitness, and possessed the most qualifications, to support the weight of government. When he had made his proposition, he subjected himself to the trial which was customary in his country, and suffered a rope to be put round his neck, while the utility of the proposition was deliberated upon. When the assembly of the senate

had concluded their deliberation, and the votes were counted for and against the motion, this plan was declared to be ill-advised and highly injurious to the interests of the state. It was thought that such a law would give rise to much dissension, and excite quarrels among the royal children; and, consequently, it was deemed far better to maintain the ancient one, which appointed the first-born Prince to the government, although he might be less fit for the weighty affair than the others.

Thus was the plan rejected, and the projector hanged. These are the only persons, in this principality, who are punished with death; as it is thought every new change, although well considered, not only gives rise to broils and disorder in the state, but, in case it be absurd, entirely subverts and destroys its best interests.

The power of the Princes of Potu is absolute; their government, for that reason, is rather paternal than rigorous; for, as they exercise justice according to principles, and not strictly according to the statute law, they know always how to unite dominion with liberty,---two things which are otherwise so easily disjoined.

One of the most beneficial regulations here is,

that the Prince endeavours, as much as possible, to preserve an equality among his subjects. Dignity is here not attached to any condition ; the inferiors are alone obliged to obey their superiors, and youth to honour old age. The subterraneous annals show, that some hundred of years before, there existed certain degrees of rank, which were constituted among them by public law ; but they show, at the same time, that those distinctions gave rise to much dissension. It was painful to the elder brothers to be obliged to give way to the younger ; nor could parents bear to see themselves thrust back by their children : one tree shunned the other, and all intercourse and sociableness were at an end. But these were not the only inconveniences which ensued. By degrees, things were brought to such a pitch, that the best and most clever trees, which nature had endued with the greatest faculties and largest number of branches, were obliged, at every banquet or assembly, to sit the lowest in order ; for those trees which possessed some intrinsic worth, and were sufficiently distinguished by prudence and virtue, could never condescend to seek any rank or title, in order to claim the right of precedence. The mean and useless trees employed means to conceal their natural defects with dignified titles of honour, and importuned the Prince incessantly with their suits and solicitations. He granted their requests, in

order to please and get rid of them ; and at length the titles became no other than a sign for the inept and useless trees. Foreigners could not refrain from laughing, when they beheld, at banquets and in solemn assemblies, that thorn-bushes took precedence, and were seated on the foremost branches, while palm-trees, cedars, and respectable oaks, with ten or eleven branches, were placed behind ; for so long as this form of government continued, almost all the thorn-bushes bore some characteristic of quality. The females among them obtained the titles of counsellors of economy, counsellors of domestic affairs, and counsellors of the Prince's privy council ; but greater dissensions, in consequence, were created in this sex than in the other. Some trees went so far in frivolous ambition, that they who by nature possessed only two or three branches, were desirous of having ten or twelve-branched titles, and thorn-bushes wished to be called palm-trees. This was about as ridiculous as a monster's wishing to have the title of high-born, or a person of mean birth insisting on being called right noble. When this calamity had risen to its highest pitch, so that the whole country was embroiled and in confusion,—as all were hunting after mere empty names and titles, which had neither honour nor merit,—a burgher of the city of Keba ventured to propose a law, by which this

custom should be abolished. He was, in the usual manner, dragged along to the market-place with a rope round his neck ; but after a council had been held upon it, and the votes were collected, his proposition was unanimously approved of, as highly advantageous to the state. He was thereupon adorned with a garland of flowers, and conducted in triumph through the city, accompanied by an immense concourse of people, uttering shouts of joy. And as it was in the course of time seen of what benefit his proposition had been to the state, he was appointed to the situation of *Kadoki*, or Lord Chancellor.

From that time forward, the law, which pronounces equality to every citizen, was strictly observed. Although all titles were abolished, the desire of emulation did not stop here ; but one endeavoured to excel another in virtue and merit. It may be seen in the subterraneous history, that since that time there has not been more than one projector, who twice endeavoured, clandestinely, to introduce again into the state the former regulation respecting rank : but on his first attempt he was sentenced to be phlebotomized ; and being afterwards accused of still labouring to accomplish his wishes, he was condemned to be banished to the firmament. At present, neither rank nor title exists

in this principality ; the supreme authority, however, grants a precedence to certain professions over others ; but no one obtains right, in consequence, of claiming the foremost place in public assemblies. A distinction is observable in the royal decrees, which usually end with these words : “ Hereunto we enjoin and command all our peasants, manufacturers, merchants, craftsmen, philosophers, artists, courtiers,” &c. I now come to the following regulation concerning rank, which is preserved in the royal archives :—

1. Those who, in the time of need, have assisted the state with their property.

2. Those who serve the state without fee or reward.

3. Peasants and husbandmen, with eight branches and upwards.

4. Peasants, with seven branches and under.

5. Those who have established fabrics or manufactures.

6. Those who practise the necessary handicrafts.

7. Philosophers, and regularly created doctors, of both sexes.

8. Artists.

9. Merchants.

10. Courtiers with a salary of five hundred rupaters.



11. Courtiers with a salary of a thousand rupaters.

I found this ordinance respecting rank exceedingly ridiculous ; and I doubt much whether any one in our world will approve of it. I, nevertheless, pretty well smelled what the subterraneans aimed at, and the foundation on which they built it ; but I must acknowledge that it still appears to me very extraordinary, and which I cannot fully comprehend.

Among other remarkable things, the following is worthy of observation.—The greater the advantages are that a person here enjoys in the state, the more modestly and humbly he demeans himself. I remember the time when *Bospolak*, the richest citizen in Potu, saluted all who met him in the street very courteously and condescendingly ; he even bent down all his branches and bowed his head low in passing every tree of the commonalty. When I asked the reason of this, I was answered that it was no more than his duty, for as he enjoyed the greatest advantage in the state, he was consequently indebted the most to it. There is, however, no law for this courteousness and condescension ; but as the inhabitants always act with deliberation and judgment, they practise this virtue voluntarily, and regard the precepts of gratitude as a law. Things

are widely different upon our globe, where those who enjoy the greatest honour and the most advantage in the state, look upon those in a lower station of life with the utmost contempt. Those who have a numerous progeny are considered here the most deserving citizens, and are revered by all without exception. These are the subterranean heroes, the memories of whom are always sacred to posterity. They alone acquire the appellation of *Great*. With us, on the contrary, the destroyers of the human race are distinguished by, and honoured with, this epithet. From what has been said, we may easily observe in what estimation the subterraneous world would have held *Alexander the Great* and *Julius Cæsar*; both of whom died without issue, and were the murderers of millions of human beings. This calls to my recollection the following epitaph, which I saw written upon the tomb-stone of a peasant in Keba:—" *Here lies Joktan the Great, the Hero of his time, and Father of thirty Children.*" It must, however, be remarked, that to deserve the epithet of *Great*, more is required than the mere begetting of children; they must also be well brought up.

In legislating, they proceed here almost in the same manner as was formerly the case among the Romans, very slowly to work. The new ordinance

or law is first posted up against the town-hall in every town, where it is free for all persons to examine and make objections against it, if they think fit, and lay them before an assembly of men of wisdom and discernment, who are appointed to sit in Potu for that purpose. Every thing that is suggested for the confirming, altering, abolishing, correcting, restricting, or extending the law, is here accurately weighed and considered; and when it has, in this manner, been revised by all those who are versed in the law, it is then laid before the Prince for his assent and signature, previous to its being published. Many, probably, will find this slow way of proceeding ridiculous; but the consequence of this cautiousness is, that the laws never lose their force; nor is there, as it is said, a single law or statute in this principality, which has undergone the least alteration for these five hundred years.

The Prince possesses designations of all the best trees in his dominions, which are accompanied by attestations, concerning every one's fitness, from the examining Karatti, and a testimony from the headborough and neighbours respecting every one's way of thinking and conduct. The Prince knows, therefore, always where to find clever trees to fill the vacant situations. There is here a very singular

and extraordinary measure adopted, which is, that no person shall fix his abode in any city or town, unless he bring an attestation regarding his honesty and morality from the town or country where he has last resided, and give security for his good behaviour for the future.

No person dare, under pain of death, make any remarks on a law which has once been published. In consequence of this, there will be found less liberty in political, than in religious matters. The reason which they assign for it is this: Whosoever errs in religion, or the articles of his faith, does that alone to his own injury; but he who throws a doubt upon the public law, and distorts it by his comments and elucidations, puts the whole state into confusion.

Respecting the Prince's household, and its economy, I have already made some remarks. I mentioned, that the *Kadoki*, or Lord Chancellor, held the first place among the courtiers. Next to him comes the *Smirian*, or First Lord of the Treasury. During my time, this office was filled by a seven-branched widow, of the name of *Rahagna*. Her virtuous way of thinking and great talents had raised her to that important post. She had been invested with this office for a length of time, even

for some years before the death of her husband ; for although he had had a pretty good insight into financial affairs, he still was governed in every thing by his wife, and might more correctly be called her steward than her lawfully married lord. When his wife was in the straw, or from any other cause lay indisposed, he then issued his letters and orders in his own name ; but they were never considered valid, unless she at the same time signed them and affixed thereunto her seal. *Rahagna* had two brothers, the one was butler, and the other butcher, to the Court ; but they, however, durst not think, even with the assistance of their distinguished sister, of any higher promotion, as they possessed not the least understanding : in this wise do they here show their justice and equity in dispensing favours.

Although *Rahagna* had so many and important occupations, she nevertheless gave suck herself to the child of which she was delivered after her husband's death. When I expressed my opinion that I thought this was a labour too incommodious, troublesome, and improper for a lady of her rank, the inhabitants replied in the following words :—  
 “ For what reason d'ye think that nature has given women breasts ? are they as ornaments to the body, or to afford nourishment to the child ? The bringing up of the child depends much upon the

formation of the nurse's mind, and the goodness of her milk ; and those mothers who suffer other women to suckle and nurture their children, rend in twain the natural tie of affection and of the soul." This is the reason why all honest and well-bred women suckle their own infants.

The Crown Prince was a child of six years of age, and betrayed signs of a distinguished capacity and shining virtues. He possessed already six branches, which are considered very uncommon at that age ; for no one is born with more than five, or, at the most six branches ; the others shoot out as their years increase. He had a tutor, who was the most sage tree in the whole principality ; and who taught him divinity, history, the mathematics, and moral philosophy. I have myself had the opportunity of seeing the politico-moral system, or compendium of ethics and politics, which he had written for the young Prince's use. The title of this compendium is *Mahalda libab Nelit*, which in the subterraneous language signifies *The Helm of the State*. It contains many fundamental and beneficial rules, whereof I still remember the following :—

1. " Neither accusation nor recommendation ought to be listened to, nor acted upon, with too much

temerity and precipitancy ; but the judgment should be deferred until accurate information has been obtained regarding the matter.

2. “ When a person is accused and convicted of a crime, one ought to inquire and ascertain, whether the accused has at any time previous done any good action ; if so, compare the good with the evil, and give judgment accordingly.

3. “ Those who are the most troublesome to the Prince, in his Council, with their opposition, ought to be looked upon as the most honest subjects, and the most deserving of confidence ; for no man will expose himself to danger for the sake of truth, unless he have the prosperity of his country more at heart than his own welfare.

4. “ The Prince ought not to admit any persons into his Council who do not possess great wealth, and real estates, in his dominion ; for their prosperity and advantage are inseparable from the true interests of the state ; while, on the contrary, those who possess no real property in the empire, scarcely consider it their father-land ; but rather look upon it as an inn or hotel, where their stay is but for a short time.

5. " For a time, the services of a villain may be employed to advantage, provided he be well qualified for certain occupations ; but it is not advisable to vouchsafe him any particular favour : for when an iniquitous or vicious man is received among the Prince's friends, a number of equally bad citizens, with his assistance, rise to preferment and intrude themselves into the public situations.

6. " The Prince must have the least confidence in that man who the most <sup>impresses himself</sup> overruns him, and is the oftenest seen at Court : those who frequently, and uncalled for, are observed in the anti-chamber, have either done something amiss, or have some evil design.

7. " He ought the least of all to promote those who are the most zealous and ardent after honour. So certain as it is that no person asks alms, unless he be hungry or needy, it is equally certain, that no one endeavours more vehemently after external honour than he who cannot attain to renown through virtue or merit."

The following is a very beneficial rule ; but I could not approve of it, on account of the offensive example with which it was illustrated. It runs nearly as follows :—



8. "No citizen can be looked upon as entirely useless and unfit for any thing. No one is so stupid that he cannot be employed in some way or other, where he would, perhaps, even surpass others, were it only known which was the right employment to choose. One person may possess great judgment, another ingenuity; one stability and firmness of mind, another strength of body; one may be employed as a judge, another as a writer; one may be capable of making discoveries and forming plans, another clever at executing them: few are completely useless. That so many are looked upon as such, is not the fault of the Creator, but of man himself, who neglects to examine strictly his own powers and capability."

This was now illustrated with the following instance of myself:—"We have, in our time, seen a wonderful animal, which, by reason of his quick conception, was looked upon as entirely useless; but his nimble feet have proved him of the greatest advantage and benefit to us." When I had read thus much, said I to myself: The exordium was written by an honest man, but the peroration by a scoundrel.

9. "One of the Regent's most important duties is, that he select a fit person to be tutor to his successor. As the prosperity of the whole state

depends upon the instructions which the Crown Prince receives, it is essential that he who has the care of his education should be a clever and skilful man. That which a person learns in his youth becomes afterwards a second nature. The tutor must particularly be a great patriot, and every rule which he sets before the Prince must tend to instil into his heart affection for his subjects.

10. " The Prince ought to be well acquainted with his subjects' way of thinking, and act accordingly ; and if he will restrain vice and prevent crimes, these must be effected more by examples from himself, than by the rigour of the law. The influence of example is always great in proportion to the dignity of the person who sets it.

11. " He ought not to allow any one to remain idle ; for lazy persons are a burden to the country. The power of the state increases by means of care and industry, but is weakened through plots, sedition, and conspiracies ; the consequences of noxious indolence. It is far better that the citizens should employ their time about trifles, at plays, and other diversions, than they should remain entirely unoccupied.

12. " The Prince ought to maintain peace and

harmony among his subjects ; but it may be very beneficial to keep up a kind of jealousy among his counsellors of state ; for by these means, the truth, of which he might, perhaps, otherwise remain ignorant, is frequently brought to light: a judge will oft obtain a more accurate information, and idea of the law-suit in which he is presiding, through the controversy and disputes of the advocates.

13. “ The Prince will do wisely, in all matters of importance, to hearken to the opinion of the whole Senate. But the surer way is to examine and sift every one singly, rather than altogether, in the Council when assembled. For in public assemblies, where every person can openly express his sentiments, it frequently happens, that the power of eloquence of one man will sway the opinions of the others, so that the Prince, instead of hearing the sentiments of many, will in reality only have heard those of one individual.

14. “ Punishments are not less necessary than rewards. The first restrain vice, as the latter promote virtue. It is expedient even to reward a vicious man, when he has performed a good action, in order that it may encourage others, so much the more, to a strict observance of their duty.

15. "Sound reason teaches us, that the fitness of the person, in particular, ought to be looked to, on promoting any one to a public situation. As uprightness and integrity are the principal recommendations, one is too often deceived by the appearance of these virtues ; for, in order to pave the way to office, every one will assume the air of them. Besides, one never can with certainty judge of a man's probity and honesty before he is in office : it is the true theatre upon which he generally exhibits to the world his real worth and virtue. But the fitness or qualifications might easily be proved by means of a preliminary examination. The stupid or ignorant man is not able so easily to conceal his ignorance, as the hypocrite to feign himself honest, and the villain to dissemble his wickedness. Fitness and honesty are not discordant qualities : they may be as well found united in the same person, as that honesty and stupidity may be separate. But he who possesses both fitness and honesty is a perfect man. A stupid man has either a good or a bad heart : is he wicked ? we then know what heinousness may proceed from stupidity united with wickedness ; but if he be honest, the virtues which he possesses cannot be brought into action, on account of his ignorance ; and in case he dare not, or cannot, of himself, commit a crime, his officers or servants may do so, because he has need of their

services. A stupid land-owner readily engages a crafty steward ; and an ignorant justice of the peace, a keen and artful secretary, who deceives without fear, and lays the blame to his master, if any thing miscarries. Fitness is therefore of the greatest importance to be looked to in promotions.

16. “ It is inconsiderate to set those persons down as ambitious, who strive after honourable employments in the state, if they find themselves duly qualified to undertake them ; or to declare those persons proud, who take pains to obtain such occupations. Should the Prince, in conferring his offices, be inclined to look too closely to humility, then the most haughty will immediately put on the mask of humility, that they may the more quickly and surely obtain their end. The Prince would, in such a case, contrary to his own intention, only promote the most ambitious men, who, with the modest air of virtue, had dissembled their feelings, as if they hated ostentation, and were lovers of quiet, and who had allowed their friends to spread the rumour, that they detested public honour. As a confirmation hereof, the following example was quoted :—An important office was vacant ; and a great man, who desired to obtain the appointment to it, wrote to the Prince, saying, that he had heard that his Serene Highness had determined on conferring upon him this post,

after which so many were striving ; but he must beg to be excused from it, acknowledging that he was not qualified to fill it ; on the contrary, he most humbly entreated that some one else, better qualified than himself, might enjoy this honour—and the more so, as he himself was contented with his present condition, and strove not after greater honour. The Prince had not once thought of such a thing ; but this proof of humility affected him so much, that he conferred the office upon him who had declined it. But he soon observed that he had been deceived by a feigned humility ; as this new courtier surpassed all others in haughtiness, impudence, and effrontery.

17. “ To appoint an indigent man or a bankrupt as treasurer, is equivalent to appointing a hungry wolf to the post of purveyor of the kitchen, or steward of the larder. The same remark holds good in regard to a rich miser ; for the one has nothing, and the other can never get enough.

18. “ The Prince ought not to confirm legacies and endowments, which have for their object the supporting of lazy and slothful trees, and nourishing their indolence. For that reason, no one should be received into a monastery or other institution in this principality, unless they are very industrious, assi-

duous, and skilful trees, that can either be of service to the state through handiwork, or honour the society whereof they are members, with their learning and knowledge. Some few monasteries must, however, be excepted, in which old and decrepit trees are supported; for they, by reason of their advanced age, ought to be exempt from labour.

19. "When crimes in the state render a reformation necessary, it will be expedient to go slowly to work. To attempt at once, by coercion, to extirpate all old and deep-rooted errors, is the same as prescribing to a sick man an emetic, a purge, and phlebotomy, at the same time.

20. "Those who are audacious enough to promise every thing, and undertake, at the same time, many occupations, are either fools who are unacquainted with their own abilities and the importance of the affair, or bad and dishonest citizens who alone consider their own welfare, and not the prosperity of the state. The prudent man proves his strength before he takes the load upon his shoulders, and the honest citizen is incapable of performing any of the important offices of state with precipitancy."

## CHAPTER VIII.

---

 ON THE SCHOOLS IN POTU.
 

---

THIS principality has three academies ; the first whereof is in *Potu*, the second in *Keba*, and the third in *Nahami*. The sciences which are there taught, are History, Economy, Mathematics, and Jurisprudence. As their theology is so short, that it might be written almost on two pages, and contains no other doctrine than that we shall love and honour God, the Creator and Director of all things, who will reward us in a future state for our virtues, and punish us for our vices ; it is not an academical science, and never can be, since it is rigorously forbidden, by law, to dispute concerning the nature of the Deity and his attributes. Neither is medicine reckoned among the academical sciences ; for as the trees live very temperately and regularly, they scarcely know any thing of internal diseases. I shall not touch upon metaphysics and the tran-



scendental sciences, as I have lately mentioned that those who dispute regarding the Divine being, the attributes of the angels, and the nature of the soul, are ordered to be phlebotomized, and conveyed to the lunatic hospital, or to bridewell.

The academical exercises are as follow :—During the first years, the young students are obliged to solve abstruse and difficult questions. These are proposed at certain times, and a reward is set forth to him who solves them in the most correct manner. By these means, the directors or professors of the sciences discover the true proficiency that every one makes, and to which profession his bias leans. No person studies more than one science, for poly-history is looked upon as a proof of a fickle and unsteady mind. The studies not being very prolix or diffuse, they are learned to perfection in a short time. The preceptors themselves are obliged, every year, to give proof of their erudition: the professor of philosophy must solve a problem in ethics; the professor of history has to produce an historical piece; the professors of economy and mathematics are obliged to improve their knowledge by one or other new discovery; and those versed in the law must produce beautiful and adapted orations, they being the only persons allowed to practise rhetoric, as these exercises, properly speaking, can

only be of use to those who plead causes at the bar. I related to them that all academical trials of rhetoric were out of fashion with us ; but they condemned this regulation, saying, that if all mechanics or craftsmen were to make only shoes in a masterly manner, the greatest part of other work would be done very ill, and shoemakers alone would gain the prizes. I named merely rhetoric ; for I durst not mention the disputations, as the inhabitants in the subterraneous world reckoned these among jugglers' tricks. Their public teachers do not explain the beneficial and salutary truths in so rigorous and imperative a manner as the philosophers with us ; but they blend beautiful and agreeable narratives and recitals with their rules of teaching, so that they are hearkened to with pleasure.

The gravity and air with which all academical matters and advancements are here conducted, are quite worthy of admiration. Great care is taken that nothing shall appear in them which might excite laughter, and also that these ceremonies shall not appear farcical ; in order that the sciences, on account of such unseemly customs, might not be contemned : I durst not, for that reason, speak of the ceremonies which are practised in our academies, in the distribution and dispensing of degrees and dignities. That which I encountered in *Keba*, when I described

the promotions of our doctors, was sufficient to deter me from ever touching again on the subject.

Independent of these academies, every town possesses a large seminary or gymnasium, wherein much pains are taken to ascertain the dispositions of the youth, and to know in what branch of knowledge each makes the greatest proficiency, and to what professions he or she is the best adapted. When I was instructed in the seminary of Keba, the chief priest had four sons, to whom he taught the military art. To four others, whose father was a senator, he taught handicrafts, and two young ladies were instructed in navigation; for there the natural talents of the young tyro are more looked upon than either condition or sex. When their dispositions have been correctly and accurately proved, each receives a testimonium from the superintendents of the seminary, which is drawn up with the greatest impartiality, as I have before mentioned. These testimonials are considered here as very faithful documents; although I was of a widely different opinion when I was furnished with my testimonium from the seminary of Keba, which appeared to me highly absurd and unreasonable.

No person is here permitted to write a book before he has completed his thirtieth year, and is

declared by the superintendents of the sciences duly fit for such an undertaking. Therefore but very few writings, that are not learned and perfect, ever come before the public. I took special care not to mention to any one, for fear of being laughed at, that I, before I had attained to manhood, had written five or six learned treatises.

This must now suffice in regard to this nation's character, religion, politics, and knowledge. I cannot, however, omit to add to this a few of their peculiarities, which struck me as being very worthy of remark.

When one tree challenges another, the one that gives the challenge loses for ever his right to bear arms, and is sentenced to live under a guardianship, like a child, because he is unable to govern his passion. With us, on the contrary, challenges are looked upon as proofs of heroism, particularly in our northern country, where this evil practice had its origin; for the Greeks, Romans, and other ancient nations, knew nothing of challenges.

In the Potuitish legal procedure I remarked something as very singular, which was, that the names of the parties going to law remained a per-

fect secret to the judges, and that the actions were not decided in the place where the disputes arose, but were judged in very remote provinces. The grounds for such an uncommon custom were, that most of the judges, as experience had shown, took bribes, or in some other way committed an oversight of partiality ; but when they neither knew the accuser, the accused, the wealth, substance, property and matter, about which, or whom, the lawsuit was carried on, they were free from every temptation or allurements. The evidence and proofs, from both parties, were forwarded by consent of the Prince, to a definitive court of judicature, with some remarks annexed, as for example :—Whether A, who is in possession, ought to give up property to B, in conformity with his demand and complaint. I should very much wish that this custom were introduced among us, as we so often experience the effect that partiality and other temptations have upon the minds of the judges.

Justice is here exercised impartially and without constraint. The Princes, however, cannot be cited before a court of judicature ; but as soon as they are dead, they are then impeached by public accusers, or the nation's advocates. The actions of the deceased Prince are now canvassed in a numerous assembly of the senate ; where at

length the sentence is pronounced, giving to him one of certain titles, according to his merits. They are as follow:—*Worthy of praise—not entirely unworthy of praise—good—not bad—tolerable—middling*. A herald exclaims one of these terms publicly among the people, and afterwards it is written upon the tomb of the deceased. The Potuites assign the following reason for this custom: the Prince, whilst alive, cannot be cited before a tribunal without uproar and commotion; for, as long as he lives, his subjects owe him an unconditional obedience and continual honour, whereby the State is best upheld and maintained; but when the Prince dies, the bond is broken between him and his subjects, therefore the latter can now, as a free people, cite him before the Court. By this beneficial, although uncommon regulation, care is taken for the Prince's safety, the supreme power loses nothing of its majesty, and at the same time the well-being of the State is maintained. Although these terms or epithets cannot be ascribed to the dead, nevertheless it encourages and incites the living to practise virtue. It may be seen in the Potuitish history, that in the course of four hundred years, there had not been above two Princes who received the lowest epithet of *middling*. The rest have almost all acquired that of *worthy of praise*, or *not entirely unworthy of praise*, as

may be read on their monuments, which all-devouring time has not yet dilapidated or destroyed. The epithet *middling*, which in the Potuitish language is called *rip-fac-si*, occasions so much sorrow in the family, that the successor to the deceased, and the whole of his relations, wear mourning for six entire months after. The succeeding Princes show no displeasure towards the judges in consequence of such reproachful sentences, which are looked upon as encouragements for doing right, and acting with prudence, justice, and equity, whereby the stain, which the illustrious house has drawn upon itself, may be blotted out.

The reason why one of their Princes obtained the lowest epithet, was this: notwithstanding the Potuites being well-disciplined and exercised in military affairs, and, when they are attacked, returning the blows valiantly and bravely, they still never make war themselves. For this reason they become willingly mediators between other belligerent nations; and sundry States on this planet have voluntarily subjected themselves to the dominion of this just and peaceable nation. But the Prince *Mikleta*, incited by a too hasty desire of extending the frontiers of his empire, attacked the neighbouring States, and conquered them entirely in a short time. As much as Potu gained by this

augmentation of power, she lost again on the other side, through changing the friendship of her neighbours into fear and jealousy. The distinguished respect for justice and equity, to which the State had hitherto owed its increase and flourishing condition, began from that time to suffer. As soon, then, as the Prince was dead, the Potuites showed their displeasure by putting this stain upon his memory, in order to win back the affections of the other nations. Wherein the errors of the other Prince consisted, I could never get to know.

Those persons only, who have attained to the third age, are eligible for public teachers. To explain this more fully, it must be observed that the lives of the trees are divided into three ages. The first is for those who are instructed in the administration of state-affairs; in the second they practise that which they have learned in the first; and in the third age they instruct the others, after they have resigned their situations with honour and renown. For this reason, no one obtains permission to teach publicly, unless he is become old in the service of the State; as it is supposed, that no person is able to give well-grounded directions who has not acquired his knowledge by experience.



If a person, who is notorious for immorality, impart any salutary and beneficial advice to the State, his name is concealed, in order that the noble project may not suffer in consequence of the unworthiness of him who made it, and the project itself is made public under the name of a more worthy character.

In respect to religion, I have already stated that it is here forbidden to dispute regarding its fundamental doctrines, and in particular concerning the essence and attributes of the Divinity ; but then, on the other hand, every one is at liberty to express his opinion freely on all other matters, and submit it to the consideration of the public. The Potuites said that such like disputes might be compared to tempests, which overthrow trees and the roofs of houses, at the same time that they purify the air, and prevent its being corrupted by a too long calmness. They have not many festivals, because they give rise to much sluggish indolence, and the Potuites believe that the true worship of God consists not less in beneficial and useful labour, than in prayers and invocations.

Poetry is not cultivated here with much eagerness, although some poets are here and there to be found in this principality ; but the subterraneous

poetry is distinguished from prose only by a higher style. They for that reason, ridiculed that which I related to them regarding our accents, quantities and the like, as children's play.

Among the Potuite teachers there are some who are called professors of good taste. These take care that the imaginative faculties of the young folks shall not be occupied with insignificant and trifling matters; that all the low and vulgar writings, the reading of which vitiates and destroys the taste, shall not come before the public; and that from all books, which may be printed, those things shall be erased, which are repugnant to common sense. To this end there is appointed a censorship over books. Quite otherwise are matters ordered upon our globe, where the best writings are oft suppressed by the censors, merely because they either deviate from the prevailing opinion, or differ from an established style; or because they wisely, and with candour, inveigh against the foolishness and weakness of mankind: censors, by whom the spirit of the sciences is naturally smothered, and who prevent sound and salutary writings from finding their way to the public eye. But as there is a free trade between the Potuites and the neighbouring nations, low and vulgar books are oft smuggled into the country. For this reason

certain inquisitors are appointed, who from time to time examine different collections of books. These persons are called *Syla-makatti*, that is, Purifiers of libraries. After the manner of a kind of people in our world, who annually sweep our chimneys, so do these inquisitors enter and sweep the book-shops, and carefully and attentively separate the bad from the good, throwing the base and common books, which may have a tendency to corrupt the taste, into the fire. Zounds ! thought I to myself, what would be the destruction among the books on our globe, if such a regulation as this were there introduced !

Nothing is more deserving of praise than the vigilance which is applied in examining the talents of the young people, in order to discover which pursuit in life is best suited for each to follow. For, as the smallest false note is perceived by a musical ear, in like manner the judges, who are appointed to examine the dispositions of the young folks, can, by means of trifles, discover things of importance, and are able also, by the appearance of the eye, by the playing and contraction of the eyebrows, by their gay or serious countenances, by their laughter, by their delivery, by their silence, and other such like things, to judge of what is con-

sistent with, and what is repugnant to, every one's nature.

But to return to myself again. I had but little pleasure in conversing with these foolish trees, who constantly despised and ridiculed me, in consequence of the too quick conceptive faculty which they at one time ascribed to me. I was much chagrined at the nicknames which they frequently gave me. I was called, for example, *Skabba*, which means an untimely and immature person. But that, about which I was the most vexed, was, that my washerwoman was not scrupulous in applying to me the same odious epithet, notwithstanding she was herself a vile, indigent, and miserable lime-tree.

## CHAPTER IX.

---

TRAVELS ROUND THE PLANET NAZAR.

---

HAVING now for the space of two years performed the laborious service of courier, and perambulated the country with proclamations and letters patent, I became at length completely weary of this troublesome and unseemly occupation. I presented to the Prince one petition after another, praying to be discharged from my present situation, and appointed to a more honourable post. But my solicitations were always unsuccessful; as His Serene Highness was of opinion, that a more important employment would be beyond my abilities. He quoted both the law and the custom to me, which were adverse to my petitions, and according to which, those persons only who possessed the necessary qualifications were allowed to be promoted to eminent and difficult situations. "It was expedient," he said, "that I should con-

tinue in the service into which I had once entered, until such time as I might be able, by my own merit, to pave myself a way to a higher appointment." He concluded with the following admonitory counsel :—

" Let ev'ry one his talents justly weigh !  
 ' And learn to know yourself !' is wisdom's precept ;  
 And ere you take a load upon your shoulders,  
 First prove their strength, and try if they can bear it ! "

These repeated refusals caused me at length to come to a temerarious and desperate resolution. I endeavoured with all my powers to invent something new, whereby I might be enabled to prove the superiority of my talents, and rub off the stain which was stamped upon my capacity. I spent nearly a year in applying myself to the study of the laws and customs of the principality, in order, if possible, to discover either in the one or the other some point which might stand in need of amendment. The observations that I made in this respect I disclosed to a thorn-bush, who was my most intimate friend. He was of opinion, that my reflections and considerations were not entirely irrational ; but at the same time, however, doubted much, whether they would prove of any advantage to the State. " It was the principal duty of a reformer," he said, " to view particularly and minutely

the condition of the country into which he is desirous of introducing a reformation ; for one and the same measure, according to the difference of the state of two countries, might produce quite other and entirely opposite effects, like a medicament that would cure one man, but, if taken by another, might prove fatal to him. He called my attention to the risk to which I exposed myself in hazarding this game,—representing to me that my life would certainly be forfeited, if my plan, on examination, did not succeed, and begging me, for that reason, to consider everything very deliberately and attentively before I took any steps. He nevertheless did not entirely dissuade me from my design, as there was a possibility, he added, of my discovering something or other, after mature reflection, which might prove both beneficial to myself and to the State.

I followed this advice of my friend, and deferred the presentation of my plan until a future period. In the mean time I continued to perform my office with patience, and traversed both towns and provinces in my usual way. This perpetual rambling from place to place afforded me an opportunity of acquiring an accurate knowledge of the whole principality and the adjacent countries ; and that I might not forget the remarks I had made upon my journeys,

I wrote them down in the best style whereof I was master, and presented them all together in this state to the Prince, in a volume of a decent and respectable thickness.

I learned very quickly that this work was completely after the taste of His Serene Highness. He perused the book throughout with great attention, and after having recommended it to the Council of State, with an abundance of commendations, he determined on making use of my services to circumambulate, and make discoveries upon, the whole planet *Nazar*. I expected, however, a very different reward for the sleepless nights I had passed, and sighed out in silence the words of the poet:—

“ Merit, which ev’rywhere should be protected,  
Is oft, alas ! despis’d, and oft neglected.”

But as I always had a particular desire to see and hear every thing that was new and strange in the world, and as I fully relied upon receiving a handsome and extraordinary remuneration from this kind and beneficent Prince, on my return, I undertook the task with a kind of pleasure.

Although the entire planet *Nazar* is hardly twelve hundred miles in circumference, it neverthe-



less appears to the inhabitants, in consequence of their uncommonly slow gait, to be very large. On this account there are many countries, particularly the most remote ones, which are entirely unknown to them. No Potuite was able to perambulate the States of this planet in the space of two years ; while I, on the contrary, with the help of my nimble feet, could perform the journey in little more than a month.

That which I in the beginning took the most to heart, was the fear of a difference in the language ; but I was consoled with the assurance, that the inhabitants of the whole planet, how much soever they varied in manners and other respects, had but one language, and that the whole of the branch species was everywhere inoffensive, sociable, communicative, and hospitable, so that without the least danger I might travel whithersoever I pleased round about the entire globe. These accounts stimulated my propensity now still the more, and I set out on my travels in the beginning of Poplar month.

Everything which now follows will be found so wonderful and marvellous, that a person might easily be induced to look upon them as mere phantasies and poetical inventions ; particularly as the physical and moral differences which I noticed on my

journey were so great, that, on figuring to ourselves the distinction which exists among the great variety of people on our globe, which are situated so remotely from each other, we are then able only to form a very faint idea regarding the same. But it must be taken into consideration, that most of the nations upon the planet *Nazar* are separated from each other by sounds, seas, and oceans ; on account of which, the globe appears like a kind of Archipelago. The inhabitants cross these waters very rarely ; and the ferrymen who dwell on their margins, are there solely for the accommodation of travellers. The natives very seldom set their feet out of their own abodes, and if they were obliged sometimes to cross the water, they generally hastened immediately back again, as they could not bear to live in a foreign country. Thus it is, that as many nations as we find, so do we also find as many new fashions and tastes.

The principal cause of this great inequality must be sought for in the variety of nature, which is sufficiently evinced by the many-coloured fields, the various soils, plants, fruits, and herbs, which we find in every country. Is it to be wondered at, that in this great variety of soil and fruit there should be found such inequality, and so opposite dispositions and manners among the inhabitants ? In our world,

the difference between the manners, way of thinking, colour, formation of the mind and body, of the remotely scattered nations, is not so considerable ; for the soil being nearly the same in every part—except in so far that one country may be more fertile than another—and the water, fruits, and herbs, being of a very similar nature, such heterogeneous beings could not possibly be here produced, as in the subterraneous world, where every country is of an entirely peculiar nature. Foreigners are permitted to travel and trade in every part, but not to establish themselves, or fix their residence anywhere,—this being contrary to the constitutions of the different countries ; therefore all the foreigners that are met with, are either travellers or merchants.

The provinces which immediately border on, and are adjacent to, Potu, are almost all of the same quality and condition in nature as this principality. The inhabitants of them, in ancient times, carried on some very bloody wars against the Potuites ; but now, on the contrary, they are either in alliance with them, or they have submitted to their mild dominion. But as soon as one has crossed the Great Sound which divides the whole planet, if I may so say, into two parts, completely new fashions, as well as entirely different species of animals, which are unknown to the Potuites, are immediately

observable. The only properties, which all the inhabitants of the planet possess in common, are reason, their tree-like form, and the same language. On this account travelling is by no means difficult ; and the less so, as the inhabitants, by reason of the great multitude of foreign travellers and merchants who pass through the provinces, are accustomed to see very different kinds of beings, which are even entirely dissimilar in themselves.

I think it necessary to remind my readers of all this beforehand, in order that they should not be offended at the following narrative, and look upon it as an ordinary, or extraordinary, tale told by the master of a ship.

It would be too long and too tedious to enumerate, in historical order, every thing great and small that I met with on my travels ; therefore, to avoid this useless prolixity, I will confine myself to describing those nations which appeared to me the most peculiar and uncommon, and in whose manners and natural dispositions I discovered so much of the extraordinary and wonderful, that the planet *Nazar* appeared to me deserving of a place among the wonders of the creation.

I everywhere observed, that the whole of the

tree-folks differed very little in politeness, judgment, and gravity, from the Potuites ; but in customs, manners, faculties of the mind, and conformation of the body, I found them so various, that every province appeared to me to be a new world.

In *Quamso*, the first province we arrive in after crossing the Sound, the inhabitants, who are all oaks, experience no bodily infirmities or sickness ; but attain to the greatest age, in perfect and continual health. These people seemed to me, in the beginning, to be the happiest of all living creatures ; but I quickly perceived, in the slight intercourse I had with them, that I was in considerable error. I saw correctly enough, that no one among them was dejected or troubled ; but, on the other side, neither did I observe any one either jovial or glad. In the same manner that the most serene firmament and the softest air make no impression upon us, unless we previously experience snow, and rain, and sleet, and tempests, so have these trees no conception of their happiness, because it is never interrupted ; and are incapable of perceiving that they are healthy, because they are never sick. They pass away their lives in continual health ; but at the same time in constant indifference. Every good, which is enjoyed without interruption, wearies in the long run, and to enjoy

fully the sweets and pleasures of life, it is necessary and essential that we sometimes taste its bitters. I can safely say, that among no people did I ever find so little civility, politeness, and good-nature, so algid, inanimate, and stiff conversation and intercourse, as among this. It is a nation without any vice ; but which one can neither love nor hate, where no offences are committed, and where no benevolence or complaisance is to be met with ; in short, where nothing is found that can displease, and nothing that is completely agreeable. As, by reason of the continual health which they enjoy, they never have the opportunity of seeing any deceased persons, and as they are never moved to pity or compassion at the sufferings of a fellow-creature, they pass away their whole life-time in a perfectly insensible quiet and repose, and without the least participation in the fate of their brethren ; so that not the smallest trace of charity, pity, or beneficence, is to be found among them. We, on the contrary, who by means of sickness are reminded of our mortality, and are continually exhorted to hold ourselves in readiness for our last journey, learn, by our own sufferings and torments, to have pity and compassion upon others. I had, in that country, evident demonstration how far sickness and the danger of death contribute to reciprocal affection, gaiety, and cheerfulness, in the

intercourse with our fellow-creatures ; and how unjust we are in murmuring at our Creator, because we appear to be born to all these sufferings, which are of such essential service to us, and are attended with the happiest consequences.

These oaks are nevertheless subject to sickness, like all other trees, as soon as they arrive in any strange place. I believe for this reason,—that this advantage of health, if it may be called an advantage, ought solely to be attributed to the air and the provisions of the country.

The province *Lalak*, which is called by the surname *Maskatta*, or the *Happy*, appeared to accord with this appellation. Every thing there came forth spontaneously, without the least help of art. It was neither necessary to plough nor to sow in that extremely fertile region ; in short, I acquired, during my stay here, a thorough knowledge of this land of bliss,

Which milk and honey in abundance yields,  
That flow in streams through groves and fertile fields,  
In streams whose banks are deck'd with melons rare,  
And beauteous strawberries without compare ;  
Where adamantine rocks, in lieu of vines,  
Yield choice, nectareous, and delicious wines,

That pour in golden streams—O splendid sight !  
 Down into reservoirs of crystal bright ;  
 Which in the verdant dales, in rosy bowers,  
 Exhaustless stand, bedeck'd with fragrant flowers,  
 Where all, protected from the noontide heat,  
 May cheer their spirits in a cool retreat.  
 No finer fruit than here is found, I trow,  
 Was ever seen on Eden's trees to grow ;  
 Of taste delicious, and of beauteous hue,—  
 The like, perhaps, was never brought to view.  
 In great luxuriance vegetate these trees,  
 From which you pluck the fruit whene'er you please ;  
 And ev'rywhere is sav'ry pottage seething,  
 The fumes whereof will nearly stop your breathing.  
 While pullets, ready pick'd, descend in lots,  
 And plunge into the Jasper-seething-pots..  
 Now from the woods spring young and tender hares,  
 Nor dog, nor gun, nor yet the wiry snares,  
 Are ever wanted to secure your game--  
 So gentle, so domestic, and so tame,  
 Are all those timid animals, God wot,  
 As though they'd just come from the seething-pot ;  
 For ready cook'd they come, betray no fears,  
 And spring upon your dish,—all volunteers :  
 And roasted woodcocks, pheasants, snipes, and larks,  
 And finer game than e'er was found in parks,  
 Come in abundance, just to suit your wishes,  
 All self-produced, on splendid porcelain dishes.  
 A sugar-snow, when this is ended, falls,  
 And soon assumes a form of little balls ;  
 It rains then lemon-juice, and in a trice  
 The sugar-snow is crystalliz'd to ice.



Then puddings, tarts, and also fruits we candy,  
 Preserves of all sorts, likewise cherry-brandý,  
 Before you place themselves,—each seems to greet ye,  
 And seems to say, in silence, come and eat me.  
 Then all the birds, that are not roasted, sing  
 Their charming songs, which make the thickets ring  
 With solos, duets, and with voices three,  
 Then in grand chorus, all extempore.  
 Of these good things, the trav'ler, when he will,  
 Partakes, enjoys, and eats and drinks his fill.

But these extraordinary advantages tend not, in the least degree, to make the inhabitants more happy than any body else. For, as they have no occasion to work for their support, they sleep away their lives in sloth and indolence, and are afflicted with a multitude of disorders. They have worms and corruptions in their bodies, and most of them come to a premature death.

The state of this country gave me an opportunity of making divers philosophical reflections; among others, it entered my head to contemplate the condition of this nation, in which I discovered that the servants and day-labourers, in certain ways, are much more happy than those people who never have occasion to concern themselves about their daily bread, and for that reason give themselves up to inaction, sluggishness, and sensuality.

They who are always sated, always must,—  
 In spite of ev'ry zest that art can give,---  
 Feel nothing short of loathing and disgust,  
 If in an ever-lasting feast they live.  
 The luxuries of life, if we enjoy  
 Too unrestrain'd, at length we're sure to find,  
 That they our ev'ry sense too soon will cloy,  
 Emaciate the body, taint the mind.

Hence originate the numerous vile plans, the desperate designs, and frequent suicides, which are here in vogue. For the prodigality in which they perpetually live, destroys, in every sense, all the finer enjoyments and transports of life, and begets in their stead, in every body, disgust and weariness of existence. Thus I found that this country, which I imagined to be a paradise, was the silent habitation of melancholy, much more deserving of pity than envy; and considered, therefore, that the sooner I quitted it the better.

Adjoining to this nation lies the kingdom of *Mardak*, the inhabitants of which are all cypresses, of uniform shape, if we except their eyes, which are very different. Some have oval eyes, others square, some have them very small, and others again so large that they cover the whole forehead. Some are born with two, others with three, and others with four eyes. There are even some that

have only one eye, whom one might be inclined to look upon as the evident descendants of the renowned Polyphemus, if it were not placed in the nape of the neck. They are for this reason divided into certain stocks or lineages, according to the different number and form of their eyes, the names whereof are as follow :

1. *Nagiri*, or those who have oval eyes,—to whom, therefore, all objects appear of an oval form.
2. *Naquiri*, whose eyes are square.
3. *Tulampi*, who have very small eyes.
4. *Jaraku*, with two eyes ; the one of which is always a little more askew than the other.
5. *Mehanki*, with three eyes.
6. *Tarasuki*, with four eyes.
7. *Harramba*, whose eyes occupy the whole forehead. And lastly,
8. *Skodolki*, who have only one eye, and that in the nape of the neck.

The most numerous and the most powerful race among these tribes, is that of the *Nagiri*, or those who have oval eyes, and to whom, consequently, all things appear under an oval form. The Regents, Senators, and Priests, are always elected of this tribe. These only manage the

affairs of state, and admit no person of the other classes to fill any public employment, unless he acknowledge that a certain tablet, which is placed in the highest part of the Temple erected in honour of the Sun, appears to him also of an oval shape, and attest the same on oath.

This tablet is the most sacred in the Mardakite religion. Many upright and virtuous burghers, who have a great aversion to perjury, never, for that reason, obtain any honourable post, and are continually exposed to all possible ignominy, reproach, and persecution. It avails nothing, their excusing, and endeavouring to justify, themselves, by defending the belief they ought to have in their own eyes; on the contrary, they only thereby involve themselves in actions at law, and that which is a natural defect, is laid to their charge as mischief and contumacy. The oath to which those who are desirous of being preferred to any office must subscribe, is of the following tenor :

“ *Kaki Manaska Quihompu Miriac Jakku Mesimbrii Caphani Crukkia Manaskar Quebriac Krusundora.*”

#### TRANSLATION.

“ I swear, that the sacred tablet, placed in the Temple of the Sun, appears to me of an oval shape;

and I promise to maintain this opinion until the last moment of my existence."

As soon as a person has taken this oath, he is received in the tribe of the Nagiri, and is eligible for any post of honour that he may choose to sue for.

The day after my arrival, as I was walking about the market-place, to divert myself a little, and pass away the time, I perceived an old man whom they were conducting to a place to be scourged. A prodigious multitude of cypresses followed, and loaded him with reproachful epithets and sarcasms. I inquired of what crime he was guilty; and was answered, that he was a heretic, who had publicly declared that the Tablet of the Sun appeared to him to be square, and that, notwithstanding divers admonitions, he still remained obstinate, and pertinaciously defended this dangerous and mischievous opinion.

I repaired immediately to the Temple of the Sun, in order to ascertain whether my own eyes were orthodox or not; and as the sacred tablet really appeared to me to be square, I told my landlord, who had lately been appointed churchwarden in the town, candidly, what I thought. He heaved a deep sigh on this occasion, and acknowledged, in

like manner, that it appeared to him also square ; but that he durst not express his opinion to that effect before any person whomsoever, for fear of quarrelling with the ruling tribe, and losing his appointment.

In silence, but not without a palpitation of the heart, and a violent trembling in every limb, I quitted this place, for fear my back should be compelled to atone for the error of my eyes, and that, under the odious epithet of heretic, I should be made a laughing-stock of, and disgracefully and ignominiously driven from the town. No regulation or order in the world, as it appeared to me, could be more cruel, barbarous, and unreasonable than this, whereby dissimulation and perjury, of which I was an eye-witness, alone paved the way to posts of honour. I therefore, on my return home to Potu, did not forget, on every occasion, to pour forth my spleen against this barbarous State. But as I was once, in my accustomed manner, fulminating against this regulation, and giving vent to the whole of my spite, in a dialogue with a juniper-tree, who was my most intimate friend, I received the following hint: “ We Potuites see clearly enough, that the regulations of the Nagiri are absurd and unreasonable ; but you, my dear Klim, ought not, as it seemeth to me, to be so much astonished that the inequality of

vision should be treated there with so much rigour ; for, if I remember right, you yourself related, that there are, in most of the European States, certain ruling stocks or tribes, who, because of a peculiar and natural defect in their visual organs or understanding, persecute the others with fire and sword ; and yet you extolled these violent measures, as very pious regulations, and highly beneficial to the State." I quickly remarked the drift of this rub, and immediately blushed deeply ! From that time, I always judged those who were apt to err, with much less severity, and was continually clamorous for toleration.

The principality of *Kimal* is considered, in consequence of its immense riches, the most powerful of any State upon this planet ; for, besides the large silver-mines, which are very numerous, there is collected yearly, from the rivers, a great quantity of gold dust, and the sea, near the coasts, almost everywhere abounds in pearls. But on a closer and more accurate examination of the condition of this country, I discovered that happiness was far from consisting in riches ; for the greatest part of the inhabitants were either miners, gold-refiners, or pearl-fishers, who, condemned to that unworthy and disgraceful thralldom, rummaged both the earth and the sea for the sake of sordid lucre. Those who are not en-

gaged in this employment, keep watch over the treasure that is collected. The whole country is so full of robbers, that it is unsafe, and almost impossible, to travel without well-armed guides.

There is no day kept here so sacred, but  
 The sun, when he his eye doth from it turn away,  
 Doth also turn his face from some base action.  
 Violence, fraud, and theft, are here in vogue :  
 By rapine only doth this nation live,  
 And for his kinsman, here no one is safe ;  
 Nor can a guest, in soft tranquillity,  
 Repose secure beneath his landlord's roof.  
 Brothers lurk in ambush for each other's life ;  
 And eagerly the son doth count each step  
 His aged father taketh towards the grave.  
 No trace of virtue in this land is found ;  
 And Astrea, of all the fair celestials,  
 Was herself the last to quit, full horror-stricken,  
 This blood-soak'd, vice-replenish'd earth.

In consequence, this people, who are looked upon by all their neighbours with a jealous eye, are much more deserving of compassion than of being envied. Because fear, suspicion, envy, and jealousy, rage in every bosom, the one looks continually upon the other as his enemy who watches his opulency ; so that terror, anguish of mind, sleepless nights, and pallid countenances, are the only fruits of that felicity for which the principality of *Kimál* is distin-



guished. I travelled, therefore, with much anxiety and difficulty, through this country; for at every turnpike-gate, and every stage, at which I arrived, I was obliged to furnish the guard, which was there in attendance, with my name, the place of my birth, the reason of my journey, and such like; so that I, in short, was exposed to all the unpleasantness and vexations to which a traveller is subject in a suspicious country. In this principality there is one volcano, which perpetually throws forth the subterranean burning lava in prodigious streams.

As soon as I had quitted this country, the perambulation whereof I found the most difficult and troublesome upon the whole journey, I continued my course always toward the East. I met every where with sociable, communicative, and polite, but at the same time very extraordinary, people; but at none did I marvel so much as at the inhabitants of the very small State of *Quamboja*, which was, if I may so say, inverted completely in its nature. The older, for example, a person was, the more was he dissolute, debauched, and licentious; so that rashness, incontinence, and the vices which otherwise we are accustomed to find only in youth, there increased with age. For that reason, no one, in that State, is intrusted with an office, unless he be under forty years; for as soon as he has attained to

that age, he is looked upon as a wild, impudent  
sauce-box,

Who, for his conduct, oft is made to skip  
From lashes given with his mama's whip.

I saw old men, whose heads were grey with age,  
in the streets, playing at hop-scot, and in the squares  
and markets amusing themselves with the game of  
prisoner's-base.

Here one is seen to build, all in his glory,  
A house of cards, high three or four story ;  
Another watching him, then, in a trice,  
Blows down the house that he has built so nice.  
Some here are seen at play with children's balls,  
And others cheap'ning ginger-bread at stalls ;  
Sometimes they play a game, where eggs they roll ;  
And sometimes money pitch into a hole.  
At ev'ry boyish game they're seen, and eke  
They're oft engag'd in playing hide and seek :  
And matrons too, with dolls, are oft seen tripping  
Across the fields ; next sportively are skipping.  
And hoary-headed husbands pleased you see,  
To shoot with pop-guns made of elder-tree.  
Their sports they all enjoy in this strange spot,—  
Some ride on sticks full gallop, some full trot.

The boys, as they passed, would oft reproach these  
old people, and would not unfrequently lash them

home to their children. I remember once to have seen a decrepit old man, who was spinning a top in the market-place, and that it was related to me, that he, in his youth, was a particularly grave and sober-minded personage, and filled the highest situation in the supreme Council.

This inverted order of nature is observable in both sexes. A young person, who married a very old woman, was, for that reason, everywhere told he would wear horns, ornaments which, on the contrary, with us, an old man only, who takes a young girl in marriage, is afraid of having placed on his forehead. I found once even two very emaciated old men in the market-place fighting a duel; and when I expressed my great surprise and astonishment at this extraordinary vivacity and ardour, which were manifest in these men, so advanced in age, and inquired the cause of the duel, I was answered, that a dispute had arisen between them respecting a woman of a very loose and libidinous character, to whom they both laid claim. It was also added, that they certainly would get a sound flogging from their superiors, in case the dissolute pranks and tricks of these old fellows should come to their knowledge. The same afternoon it was related, that an old lady of distinction had hanged herself in a state of despondency, for the sake of a

young beech-tree, from whom she had received a denial.

This inverted order of nature requires naturally inverted laws. No one is, therefore, by that section of the law which treats on guardianship, allowed to have charge of his own effects or estates, unless he be under forty years of age; and no contract between persons above that age is considered valid, unless it be signed and ratified by their guardians or children. In the chapter on subordination the words are: "*Old men and old women shall be dutiful and obedient to their children.*" Placemen always receive their discharge from office a little before they attain the age of forty, as they are then declared minors by the Council, and are delivered over to the superintendence and management of their young kinsfolk. I considered it, therefore, not advisable to remain too long in that country, where I, in the course of ten years, according to their laws, should be condemned to become a child again. When I had finished my journey, I compared this people's condition with the way of life and the regulations which we have here above, where numbers, in their manhood, think and write like philosophers, but who, in their old age, hunt eagerly after riches, empty titles, and other illusive fooleries. This comparison reconciled me, in some degree, again.

with the *Quambojaians*, and taught me not to have so contemptible an opinion of them, as I in the beginning had entertained.

In the kingdom of *Kokleku*, they have a custom which is not less wrong and injurious, and which cannot fail to be strongly reprobated by every European. The inversion in this custom is not the fault of nature, but is solely to be attributed to the laws. The inhabitants are all Juniper-trees of both sexes ; but the males are only employed in affairs of the kitchen, and other insignificant drudgery. In time of war, they are regularly taken into the military service, but they are seldom more than common soldiers ; and only very few rise as high as the rank of ensign. This post is the highest that any male tree, in this State, can ever hope to arrive at. To the females, on the contrary, are confided the most important, as well civil as ecclesiastical and military, offices. I had, but a short time before, blamed the *Potuities*, because they, in the distribution of employments, did not give one sex the preference over the other ; but this nation appeared to me completely unnatural and frantic. I was not able by any means to comprehend the sluggish inaction of the male sex, that it, in spite of its superiority in bodily strength, should patiently bear this despicable yoke ; and, during so many

centuries, should have suffered things to go on in their old course ; for it would naturally have been an easy matter for them to throw off the yoke, if they had either desire or courage so to do ; but the ancient custom had so completely lulled them to sleep, that it never entered the head of any one to venture to take the least step in order to wrest themselves from these disgraceful trammels : they believed that nature had so ordained it, that the females should rule the State, and that the males should weave, cook, knit, spin, sweep and clean the rooms, and get plenty of stripes into the bargain.

The females founded their claim to dominion, upon the great bodily strength of the males, upon their stronger muscles, and upon the adaption of their limbs to the more laborious work. Hence it is evident, they maintain, that nature has destined them only to that which is performed by strength of body.

Foreigners were surprised, on entering any house, to find the mistress in the study, and surrounded by papers up to her ears, while the master was bustling about in the kitchen, and busy in scouring pots and pans. And to which house soever I went, and desired to speak to the master, I was certain of being shown into the kitchen,

Where one was hacking meat, another washing ;  
 One turn'd the spit, another dumplings made ;—  
 'Mongst dishes, pots, and stew-pans, what a clashing !  
 Each trembling there, the surly dame obey'd.

I observed divers afflicting and sorrowful effects of this most preposterous custom. In the same manner as one meets with, for example, in other places, wanton and lewd females, who bring their chastity to market, and trade with their charms, young fellows and men are here met with, who make a practice of disposing of their nights ; and for this purpose they hire certain habitations, the signs and inscriptions whereof show in what articles they deal. But as this trade is generally carried on here much too impudently and too publicly, these lascivious menfolks are frequently apprehended, put into prison, and scourged in the same manner as the common prostitutes are with us. Women and young girls can, on the contrary, without the least detriment to their good name and reputation, walk the streets, nod and wink at the menfolks, stare at them hard in the face, chirp with the lips, whistle, call pst ! chuck them under the chin, take them round the neck, pull and pinch them, paint obscene figures and write immodest language in the public arcades, and play up as many pranks as they please. They relate, without any person being disgusted with them, their

obscurity and lewdness, and take state upon themselves, as though they had gained so many victories; even as the little gentlemen boast and brag among us with their ribaldry of the ladies, whose familiarity and confidence (very often only a box on the ear) they have enjoyed. No female is here in the least blamed, at besieging the young men with amatory verses, billets-doux, and presents: but a youth, on such an occasion, always behaves himself in a cool, indifferent, and very modest manner; as it is repugnant to decency and decorum, for a man to consent immediately to what a young girl may desire.

During the time that I resided in that country, there was a great tumult and uproar regarding the son of a certain senator, who was ravished by a young lady. She was spoken of and censured for this abominable affair in every place one came to, and the young man's friends whispered and muttered it everywhere, that an action at law would be entered against the girl, and that by the next Consistory she would certainly be condemned, and obliged, in order to save his honour and repair his injured reputation, to marry him; particularly since it could be proved, by the clearest evidence, that the youth was of irreproachable character, and had always led a virtuous life, before she seduced him.



O happy *Europe* ! exclaimed I on this occasion, and O, in particular, thrice happy *France*,—and thrice happy *England* ! where the weak<sup>er</sup> sex are in complete accordance with their name, and where the women obey so implicitly the commands of their husbands, that they appear much more like machines or automaton, than beings endued with a free will !

I ventured not, as long as I resided among these Juniper-trees, to defame or slander publicly this inverted custom ; but as soon as I had quitted the capital, I mentioned to several persons, that it was entirely repugnant to common sense ; as it was clear, from the general law of nature, and the common assent and approbation of all nations, that the male sex was destined to be employed in difficult and important occupations. But they insisted that I confounded customs and regulations with nature, and that the alleged imbecility in the female sex ought solely to be attributed to their education ; which the State of this country particularly showed, since it was found that virtues and mental gifts were possessed by the females, which the males in other places arrogated entirely to themselves. And it is a matter of fact, that the *Koklekuish* ladies are in general modest, serious, discreet, constant, and reserved ; while the men, on

the contrary, are fickle, addle-headed, rash, and loquacious, For which reason, when any thing very absurd is related, it is a common proverb to say—*That is the babbling of the menfolks* ; and in case any thing is undertaken with too much precipitance, and without mature reflection, it is remarked—*We must make allowance for the imbecility of the menfolks*. But I could not acquiesce in these reasons, and was satisfied in reprobating the constitution of the State, as inverted and entirely repugnant to nature. The mortifications which this female superciliousness awoke in me, was the cause of the unfortunate proposition that I made on my return to Potu, and which brought upon my shoulders a thousand troubles and vexations, regarding which I shall hereafter, in a proper place, make some mention.

Among the most magnificent buildings in this city was the Queen's Harem, in which there were three hundred extraordinarily handsome men and youths, who were maintained at the Queen's own cost, for her pleasure and diversion. On my learning that my shape and figure altogether were highly praised by many females, I betook myself in the greatest haste to prosecuting my journey, for fear I should be impressed into Her Majesty's service ; and

— Fear gave wings to my feet.

Adjoining to this kingdom is the *Land of Philosophers*, as the inhabitants, who have applied themselves deeply to the study of philosophy and the higher sciences, call it. I burnt with desire to see this realm, which I imagined must certainly be the true abode of the Muses, and the centre of all knowledge; and expected not to see fields and meadows, but

One only vast, immeasurable sea,  
Where art with nature is not in dispute,  
But where they both embrace, and dwell in peace.

With my head full of this imagination, I hastened with all speed towards this kingdom, and counted every minute on the way. I got, on this occasion, both besmeared and ulcerated legs; for the roads through the country were very stony and full of holes, and were so sundered by ditches and marshes, that I was obliged sometimes to tramp over heaps of stones, and then again to trudge through deep morasses, as nowhere was there a bridge to be found. But I boldly endured and surmounted all these difficulties, when I reflected on what awaited me, well knowing that the way to the kingdom of Heaven is not strewed with roses. When I had been painfully toiling, and combating my way through, for about the space of an hour, I met a peasant, and asked him how far I had still

to go, before I reached *Maskattia*, or the *Land of Philosophers*? “ You ought rather to ask,” said he, “ how far you have to go, before you get out of it again ; for you are now just in the midst of it.” I was vastly astonished at this information, saying, “ How is it, then, that this country, which is inhabited by nobody but philosophers, should be more like a haunt for wild beasts, than a cultivated and inhabited kingdom?” “ Ay!” answered he, “ it will shortly assume a better appearance, when the inhabitants only once have a little leisure to attend to such like bagatelles. For the present, we must excuse their suffering the fields and meadows to remain untouched, as they have something very sublime and celestial in their heads, and are speculating on discovering a way up to the sun. No man can blow his porridge and sip it at the same time.” I understood immediately what this peasant, who was allowed to be very cunning, meant to say ; I therefore continued to trudge forward, and at length arrived at the capital, which is called *Casca*. At and under the gate-way of the city, by which I entered, instead of a guard, I perceived a number of hens, geese, birds’-nests, and cobwebs. Through the streets, I saw promiscuously walking, herds of swine and philosophers, which were only to be distinguished from each other by their form ; for the latter were equally besmeared and filthy

with the former. All the philosophers wore a sort of cloak or gown ; but of what colour I was not able to discern, as it was impossible to discover it through so much dust and filth as were hanging upon them. I stopped before one of these sages, who, quite entranced and absorbed in contemplation, ran directly against me. “ I beg your pardon, Sir ! ” said I, “ may I ask the name of this city ? ” He remained immoveable for a length of time in a standing position, with his eyes closed, as if his immortal part had taken leave of his body ; but came at last again to himself, and answered with a look towards heaven—“ It is not far from mid-day.” This unseasonable answer, which betrayed a perfect insensibility and inattention, proved to me, that it was much more advisable to study with moderation, than to become deranged from too great a store of learning. I penetrated farther into the city, in order to see whether I could not find any other people or rational animals, than philosophers. In the market-place, which was very large, I observed several columns and pillars standing, on which were many inscriptions. I approached one of these columns, to try whether I could read and understand what I saw there written ; but while I was standing and spelling the words, I felt my back get suddenly warm, and perceived, at the same time, that it was com-

pletely wet. I turned me round, to ascertain from what source flowed this warm stream, and perceived a philosopher, who, without the least ceremony, was performing that against my back, which dogs are accustomed to do against mile-stones and road-posts. Being absorbed in thought, he took me for a pillar, against which he was in the habit of performing that office. I was so much exasperated at this infamous trick, particularly as *His Highlearnedness* laughed immoderately at my surprise and condition, that I gave him a violent box on the ear. But on receiving this, he rushed upon me like a furious madman, seized me by the hair, and in despite of all my crying and bawling, he dragged me round the market-place. On perceiving that his wrath was not likely to be appeased, I put myself in a posture of defence, and gave like for like, or a Roland for his Oliver; so that our receipts and disbursements kept pretty well on a par, until we at length, after a desperate conflict, both fell down exhausted upon the field of battle.

At the sight of this, an immense multitude of philosophers came running to us. They fell upon me like madmen, cudgelled and beat every limb of me with their sticks and clenched fists, and dragged me, half dead, by the hair, round about the market. Not satisfied, but tired and weary with beating

me, they at last conducted me to a large building ; and as I there, with both my feet against the doorway, pushed, and kicked, and struggled with all my might and main, against being taken in, they slipped a rope round my neck, and dragged me, like a squeaking pig, into a large hall, where they laid me on my back in the middle of the floor. Everything was lying here topsy-turvy in a promiscuous way, so that the place had the semblance of the inside of a house just before quarter-day, when people are busy removing, and all sorts of utensils, tubs, and other household furniture, are thrown in disorder one upon another. I began now to supplicate these sages to set bounds to their wrath, and show their compassion ; representing to them, how unbecoming it was for the lovers of wisdom to be furious, like wild beasts, and completely give way to those passions, against which they themselves so often fulminated from their pulpits. But my prayers and representations were entirely fruitless. The philosopher, who had made water against my back, began the conflict anew, beat me as though he were striking upon an anvil, and continued to cuff me, poor wretch ! so long, that it seemed as if he would not be appeased until he had taken away my life. I was now convinced that no wrath or anger could be compared with philosophical vehemence, and that the teachers

of virtue are far from being identified with the practisers of it; for,

The more he cuff'd, the more kept toiling,  
The more his blood and spleen kept boiling.

At length four other philosophers, whose gowns showed they belonged to another sect, entered the hall. They seemed to have pity and compassion on me, and by means of hand and voice, put a stop to the fury of the others. After that, they took some of the persons who were ill-using me aside, whispered something in their ears, and conducted me away to another house. I was heartily glad at having escaped from the clutches of these banditti, and got again among decent and honest people; to whom I related, with much amplification, the circumstances that had given rise to all this confusion. They laughed heartily on this occasion, which they called a droll and diverting adventure, and told me that the philosophers, whenever they walked across the market-place, were in the habit, in certain cases of emergency, of stopping at these pillars; and that my antagonist, in all probability, being completely absorbed in his philosophical contemplations, had taken me for one of them. They mentioned to me, at the same time, that he was a particularly renowned astronomer; and that the others, who had attacked and beat me so unmercifully, were all professors of moral philosophy.



As I now thought myself in perfect safety, I listened with much pleasure to all they related to me. Meanwhile, I cannot however, deny that the attention with which they surveyed my form, raised some scruples in my mind; as also the many interrogations and inquiries which they made concerning my birth-place, way of life, the reason of my journey, and such-like, seemed not to prognosticate much good to me.

But when they locked me up in a kind of anatomical theatre, where I saw a vast heap of bones and dead bodies, which filled the place with an intolerable stink, I was near giving up the ghost from fear and anxiety. I should have thought that I had descended into a lurking-hole for thieves, if a number of surgical instruments, which I perceived hanging against the walls, had not, in some measure, allayed my dreadful apprehensions; as I concluded from this circumstance, that mine host must certainly be a doctor. When I had been pining in this prison for the space of about half an hour, the lady of the house entered, and brought me some dinner, which she had prepared with her own hands. She appeared to me particularly polite and courteous, but looked very anxiously at me, and sighed continually. I inquired the cause of her affliction; and she answered me, that she sighed but to think

of the fate which awaited me. “You are, undoubtedly,” said she, “among decent and honest people; for my husband, who inhabits this house, is physician to the Corporation and doctor of medicine, and the others whom you saw were his colleagues; but your extraordinary form has so much excited their wonder and admiration, that they have resolved on taking your internal conformation into minute consideration, and dissecting you, in order to see whether they can discover any thing new in your inside, which may afford some elucidation to anatomy.” This information was like a thunder-clap to me; I gave a loud shriek, and exclaimed, “How can you call those decent and honest people, Madam, who are not in any wise scrupulous about anatomizing their neighbours?”—

“Your finger place upon your lips, and know  
The soil on which you stand”—

said she. “The people into whose hands you have fallen, are very honest, and have, merely for the sake of enlightening their understanding and improving their knowledge, resolved on this operation.” I replied, that I had a thousand times rather be let loose among banditti, than be anatomized by the most honest and decent people in the universe; threw myself at her feet, and supplicated

her, while a flood of tears ran down my cheeks, to intercede and obtain mercy for me. "My intercession," replied she, "will avail you but very little, against the decision of the whole faculty, who are not in the habit of revoking their decrees; but I will endeavour to save your life by other means." When she had uttered these words, she took me by the hand, led me out at a back door, and accompanied me, whilst I trembled all the time like an aspen-leaf, as far as the gate of the city.

Being now desirous of taking leave of her, and endeavouring, which was no more than right, to testify to her my gratitude in the most lively expressions, she suddenly interrupted me, by saying that it was not her intention to leave me, until she saw me in perfect safety. As I did not oppose her in this, she continued to attend me.

While we thus proceeded slowly on together, she related a good deal to me concerning the state of the country, to which I listened with much eagerness. But at length she turned the discourse to another subject, which appeared to me not strictly virtuous, as it hinted, that she, as a requital for her complaisance towards me, required me to show her a complaisance in return, which was morally im-

possible for me to do. She represented to me, with much sensibility and warmth, the unhappy fate of the married women in this country, as their philosophical schoolmasters of husbands, who are entirely buried in their books, almost completely neglect the duties of matrimony. "Yes! I can affirm it to you," added she, "that we should be completely undone, if the very courteous and obliging travelling foreigners did not now and then take compassion on our unhappy condition, and in some degree alleviate our universal sufferings, assuage our afflictions, and allay the ardour of our passions." I made as if I did not understand the drift of what she said, and mended my pace a little; but my indifference only poured oil into the fire which was then flaming in the poor lady's bosom; so that

The lately love-sick, courteous, gentle, mild,  
 Sweet-smiling goddess, once so meek,  
 Chang'd quickly to a fury; then with wild,  
 Loud-sounding, frightful, hopeless shriek—  
 While both her hands she wrung in deep despair,  
 With looks terrific, and dishevell'd hair—

reproached me with ingratitude; and as I, notwithstanding, continued my pace, she laid fast hold of the skirt of my cloak to restrain my progress. I tore away at last by main force from her grasp; and being much nimbler of foot than she, I was

very soon out of her sight. To what degree her rage rose on that occasion, I concluded from the following words—*Kaki Spalaki*, that is, *Ungrateful dog!* which she continually vociferated forth. But I bore, with Spartan magnanimity, all her abusive language and contumely; and congratulated myself on having by any means escaped, with my ears sound and whole, from this land of philosophy, on which I am still not able to think, without trembling and a feeling of horror.

Adjoining to this State lies the province *Nakir*, the capital of which bears the same name. Respecting this province I cannot say much; for I hurried through it, as well as through every country that bordered on *Maskattia*, with all speed, in order to arrive among a people who were not so absorbed in the study of philosophy, and, above all, not so eager after the elucidation of anatomy. My blood was in such a ferment, and I was so terrified and alarmed, that I asked every one whom I met upon the way, whether he was a philosopher; and I dreamed every night, for a length of time after, about skeletons and anatomical instruments. The inhabitants of *Nakir* appeared to me otherwise very courteous; for every one who met me in the street, offered me, unasked, his services; and assured me, with a great deal of amplification, that I might

depend upon his good offices. These assurances I found to be very ridiculous, as I never let it be perceived that I entertained the smallest doubt of their good will towards me, and never manifested the least suspicion concerning their sincerity; and even remarked to several persons, that I could not conceive what necessity there was for so many sacred pledges. But they renewed them on this occasion with the most solemn and dreadful oaths. On the outside of the town I met a person, who was walking very slowly, and sighing under a heavy burden which he bore on his shoulders. He stopped on seeing me, and inquired whence I came? When I answered him, that I had lately been in the city of *Nakir*, he wished me joy of my getting safe and sound out again, "as the inhabitants," said he, "are notorious rogues and sharpers, who are in the habit of plundering and stripping every foreigner who visits them." I replied, that if their actions accorded with their words, I had reason to consider them a particularly honest and upright people; since every one, with the most solemn and dreadful oaths, had testified his sincerity. The good man smiled at this, and said, "Be careful how you repose implicit confidence in any one who trumpets forth his own integrity, and especially in him who calls upon the devil to bear witness to his virtue." I never forgot this admonition, and

have very often been fully sensible of its profundity. Therefore, as soon as any of my debtors began to curse and swear by their honesty, I always demanded my money, and never lent them another penny.

On the borders of this country I arrived at a yellowish sea, on the margin whereof there lay a ferry-boat, with three tiers of oars, in which, for a very moderate fare, a person might be conveyed across to the *Land of Reason*. I struck a bargain with the ferry-man, entered the boat, and was much amused with this sea-voyage. The subterranean vessels are not rowed by human hands, but, by the help of certain concealed machines, are forced through the water with a wonderful velocity. As soon as I had arrived in this country, I met with a person who showed me the way to the city, and who related to me, as we went, a good deal about the affairs of the corporation, and the condition and way of life of the inhabitants, with which he seemed to be very intimately acquainted. Among other things, he informed me that all the burghers studied logic, and that this town was the real and true seat of reason, and accorded perfectly with its own name and that of the country. On my arrival in the city, I soon experienced that my guide had told the truth; for the meanest burgher, by reason

of his good sense, quickness of apprehension, gravity, and modest deportment, appeared to me to be a senator. At this I raised my hands towards heaven, and exclaimed—"O most happy and blessed State, which gives birth to none but *Catos* !"

But when I had acquired a more accurate knowledge of the state of affairs in the town, I observed that many things were conducted in but a very indifferent way, and that the State in some measure was diseased for lack of fools. For as the inhabitants examine and reflect upon every thing with much circumspection and judgment, and never allow themselves to be moved or affected by pompous encomiums, flowery language, and magnificent parade, many of the means are lost, by which, otherwise, so easily and without expense to the public, the burghers in a State are stimulated to great exertions, which prove of the utmost benefit to the country.

The injurious consequences to a nation, which flow from such a too anxious prudence, a certain Minister of Finance, with much zeal, severally exposed to me. "The one tree," were his words, "is distinguished from another merely by name and appearance. There is no gown-mania among the burghers, as the one cannot be distinguished by any badge of honour before another, and no one in par-



ticular appears to be wise and clever, for they are all wise and clever. I acknowledge, that stupidity is a failure ; but to extirpate it entirely in a State, does not appear to me at all advisable. It is sufficient for every town to possess only as many wise men, as there are public employments in it. It is requisite that some should govern, and others be governed. That which the government of another country is able to effect by means of puppet-show pageantry, trinkets, and baubles, cannot here be accomplished without bestowing considerable remunerations, which not unfrequently exhaust the treasury ; for the wise men, for the services they have done the father-land, demand the kernel, while fools, on the contrary, are put off with the shell. In like manner, for example, titles and marks of honour, which in other places allure fools to undertake arduous and dangerous enterprises, produce not the least effect here upon the burghers, who consider that true honour consists only in virtue and intrinsic worth, and therefore never allow themselves to be dazzled by the false glitter of trifles. In the hope of their names being immortalized and enrolled in the annals of their country, your military and naval characters," added he, " are stimulated to rush undauntedly on the greatest dangers ; we, on the contrary, who look upon all this as quibble and *double entendre*, and who are unable to comprehend the meaning of the

phrase, 'to live after death,' lack this stimulus. It is thought here not worth while to acquire any honour, praise, or glory, which we are never likely to hear named. Not to mention a thousand other inconveniences, which result from a too strict examination of the chimera, and which entirely and clearly prove the correctness of the maxim—*That it is necessary in a well regulated State, that one half, at least, of its inhabitants should be fools.* Foolishness is to society, what acid is to the stomach: and too little of either portion is as injurious as too much."

I listened to the discourse of the Minister of Finance with the greatest admiration. But on his proffering me, in the name of the Council of State, my freedom of the city, and endeavouring to tempt me to remain there, my face became quite red, and I concluded that his solicitations for my staying, were in consequence of the opinion he had formed of my stupidity, and his looking upon me as well qualified to be the stomach-acid to a State that was diseased by too much wisdom. Very soon after, when I heard that the Senate had resolved on encouraging a great number of burghers to emigrate, as settlers, to distant colonies, and that they intended to borrow as many fools from the neighbouring nations as would fill up the chasm again in the popu-

lation, my suspicions were corroborated. I quitted, therefore, not without some mortification, this with-reason-replete city. But the maxim, which I lately quoted, and with which our statesmen have hitherto not been acquainted, namely—*That it is necessary in a well-regulated State, that one half, at least, of its inhabitants should be fools*, I could not for a length of time get out of my head. I was astonished that a rule and maxim, so beneficial, should have remained so long unknown to the philosophers of our globe. But perhaps I do them wrong; for it is possible, that the one or the other may have discovered it, and perceived the correctness of it; but not thought it worth his while to introduce it among the political maxims, because this globe is, everywhere, so well stocked with fools, that (without intending to slander any town whatsoever) no hamlet, much less large city, is anywhere to be found, which in the smallest degree lacks this so extremely beneficial acid.

When I had rested myself a little, I proceeded again on my journey, and travelled through several provinces, which I shall pass over in silence, as I discovered in them very little of the extraordinary. I therefore thought that the wonders of the planet Nazar were here at an end. But when I arrived in *Cabac*, I met with new and very ex-

traordinary things, which to many may appear completely incredible. Among the inhabitants of this State, there are, for example, several who have no heads, and who come entirely headless into the world : they speak with a kind of mouth, which is placed in the middle of their breast. Because of this defect in nature, they are excluded from all arduous occupations, in which any brains are required ; and there never was an instance of any headless person obtaining an important employment in this country. The posts to which they, for the most part, are appointed, are those that are immediately connected with the Court. From among this headless race, the gentlemen of the bed-chamber, stewards of the Prince's household, attendants on the harem, grooms of the stole, and such-like, are generally chosen. From the same class are also elected beadles, sacristans, grave-diggers, and others, whose business can easily be performed without the assistance of many brains.

Now and then, however, one or the other of them is admitted into the Council, either by particular favour of the authorities, or on the ground of family merit, which rarely proves injurious to the State. For experience teaches us, that the majority in the Council commonly depends on a very few Senators, and that the rest are merely

there to fill up the number, and to consent, and subscribe to, the measures which the few have resolved upon. In this wise there sat in the Council, during the time that I sojourned in the city, two headless benchers, whose salaries were just as high as those of the others. For although they, because of this natural defect, were not furnished with very peculiarly bright understandings, nor were their ideas extraordinarily brilliant, yet they gave their votes, and assented to the opinions which the others had expressed. In this respect they were more fortunate than their colleagues, for when any affair was amiss in the Senate, no one was ever offended at those who were not possessed of heads, but vented his spleen solely against the rest: a clear proof, that it is sometimes a great advantage to be born without a head. In other respects, this city yields to no place upon this globe in pomp and splendour. It can boast of a Palace, an University, and a magnificent Cathedral.

In the two provinces in which I soon after arrived, namely, *Cambara* and *Spelek*, all the inhabitants are Lime-trees. The distinction among them consists solely in this,—that those in the first province never become more than, at the highest, four years old; while those in the second, on the con-

contrary, live to above four hundred years. In *Spelek*, therefore, a person meets with many grandfathers, great-grandfathers, and great-great-grandfathers, and hears a number of proverbs and old chronicles; so that, on arriving in this country, one might imagine that the time had been retarded for the space of some centuries. As much as I pitied the fate of the former, I, on the other hand, highly extolled the happy state of the latter. But when I had maturely reflected on the real condition of both, I noticed that I was completely out in my judgment. In *Cambara*, the inhabitants, in the course of a few months after their birth, arrive at maturity both in body and mind; so that the first year is sufficient for their formation and development, and the other three seemed to be granted to them, in order to prepare themselves for death. Under these circumstances, this country appeared to me to be a truly Platonic republic, in which every virtue arrives at the greatest possible perfection. For as the inhabitants, by reason of their very short lives, are, as it were, continually on the wing, and look upon this life as a gate through which they must shortly pass to enter into the next, their minds are more fixed upon their future than their present state. Every one, on this account, may there be looked upon as a true philosopher, who, without being at all solicitous about terrestrial affairs,

strives, through the fear of God, virtuous actions, and a clear conscience, to prepare himself for an eternal beatitude. In short, this country appeared to be inhabited by none but angels, or saints, and to be the right school in which all that is virtuous can best be learned. From this may be seen, how unreasonably many people murmur at, and even quarrel with, Providence, about the shortness of their lives ; for our lives can only be called short, inasmuch as we spend the greatest part of them in idleness, sloth, and voluptuousness ; and which would certainly be always long enough, if our time were well employed.

In *Spelek*, on the contrary, where the lives of the inhabitants are prolonged to above four hundred years, every vice, which can be found in mankind, appears to prevail. The people there have only the present before their eyes, as though they were immortal, and would never decline ; and therefore uprightness, integrity, honesty, chastity, and decency, are fled, and have given place to falsehood, deceit, extravagance, luxury, and immorality.

This prolongation of life has still another very lamentable effect. Those persons who, through unfortunate events, lose their property, receive hurts in their limbs, or fall into incurable sickness, are

accustomed to curse intolerably their existence, and at last to commit suicide, as they, because of their long lives, see no end to their sufferings. The shortness of life is the most efficacious consolation to all wretched people. Both these countries greatly excited my admiration, and I quitted them with my head filled with philosophical contemplations.

I now travelled over nothing but a barren and rocky tract of country, until I at length arrived at *Spalank*, or, as it is generally called, *The Land of Innocence*. It has obtained this appellation in consequence of the mild dispositions and innocence of its inhabitants. These trees, which are all majestic Oaks, are look upon as the happiest of all mortal beings, because they are free from all vehemence of the passions, and consequently from every vice.

Freely, unconstrain'd, each of himself obey'd  
 True nature's precepts, and in safe tranquillity,  
 Where fear and punishment were quite unknown,  
 Did daily practise virtue, equity,  
 And justice. On no sacred stone engrav'd  
 Did threats appear, nor yet on sacred tablets  
 Were rig'rous laws e'er publish'd. No one ever fear'd  
 The vengeance of his Sov'reign; and without  
 A bulwark to protect them, all were safe.  
 No trumpet ever rous'd them to amuse



Their Prince by stepping o'er the mangl'd corpses  
 Of their brethren, on the blood-soak'd field of battle.  
 The peaceful ploughshare into sword or spear,  
 Was there ne'er forged ; but without contention, strife,  
 Or battle, they their sportive gambols play'd,  
 Like tender infants on the mother's lap,  
 Secure from harm, amidst eternal peace.

On my arrival in this province, I experienced that everything which fame had said regarding it, was true ; namely, that the inhabitants, solely from their own inclinations, and not from any obligation of the law, really practised virtue. Every covetousness, wrath, hatred, pride, ambition, discord, and all other human vices, I found were expelled from this country. But at the same time, vices, and many other things which adorn mankind, and exalt the rational above the brute creation, are there wanting. If we except theology, natural philosophy, and astronomy, no other sciences are there cultivated ; and jurisprudence, politics, history, morality, the mathematics, elocution, and several others, were sciences which were even not known by name. As envy and ambition do not in the smallest degree exist among this people, there is much need of the gown-mania, which so frequently stimulates people to undertake and achieve the greatest and most laudable enterprises. There was no palace, or magnificent building, no senate,

or sessions-house, and no great wealth; as there were neither magistracy, law-suits, nor avarice. In a word, there were no vices, or rather there was no taste, art, parade, or such-like, which are looked upon as accomplishments, that add dignity and greatness to empires, and refine mankind; so that it appears much more like being in a forest of oaks, than in a cultivated State. I remained, therefore, a long time in doubt respecting the judgment I ought to form of this nation, and whether such a natural condition were really desirable to humanity. However, when I at length considered, that the want of cultivation can be much better endured than the want of virtue, and that unskilfulness in murder, outrage, theft, and other vices, that are destructive both to soul and body, was nearly allied to unskilfulness in certain sciences, I must acknowledge that this State was happy.

On the way, as I was passing through this country, I fell once by accident over a stone, and desperately hurt my left shin, which caused it to swell very much. A peasant, who witnessed the accident, ran immediately and plucked some herbs, which he laid upon the sore, whereby the pain was quickly allayed, and the swelling disappeared. I concluded from this, that this people must possess superior skill in the art of healing; which really was the

case. For as the studies of the *Spalankians* were confined to a few sciences, they are not, like our poly-historians, contented with the husk, but penetrate to the kernel. When I thanked the doctor for the service he had rendered me, and said, that God would reward him for his kindness, he replied, although in the simple style of a peasant, with so much judiciousness, profundity, and religion, that I really fancied I saw an angel, or some other kind of heavenly being, before my eyes, in the form of a tree. From this may be seen, how unreasonably we are sometimes offended at the partisans of apathy, whom we believe to live in indolence and sluggishness, because they do not feel great solicitude, and exhibit excessive sorrow or joy, and never give way to anger or any other vehement passions of the mind. But still more clearly may it be seen from this, how greatly those persons err, who believe that vice is in any way necessary to man, and insist that anger is the soul of valour, envy the stimulus to industry, and suspicion the mother of prudence; for the apple falls commonly not far from the stem, and an addled egg never produces a fine chicken. Many of the virtues, whereof mankind seems to be proud, and which are extolled to the skies, both in rhyme and blank verse, deserve, when they are viewed with a philo-

sophic eye, much more to be reprobated than extolled.

When I quitted this country, I travelled through the province *Kilak*, the inhabitants of which are born with certain marks on their foreheads, which indicate the number of years that each has to live. I looked upon these people in the beginning to be very happy, as death could never surprise them, nor tear them away with all their sins upon their heads. But, as every one knows on what day he shall die, they all procrastinate their repentance until the very last hour. If, therefore, one were desirous of finding a person among them, who led a religious and honest life, one ought to look for such a character among those whose marks on the forehead announced that they were chanting the last verse of their funeral dirge. I observed several walking through the streets with their heads hanging down; these were all persons who must shortly pass on into a future state. They counted the hours and minutes upon their fingers, and looked forward with dread to their momentarily approaching dissolution. This placed conspicuously before my sight, the wisdom and goodness of the great Creator towards us in this respect; and I was thoroughly convinced that it was right that God's

creatures should be ignorant of the time of the coming of death.

From this place I was ferried over a kind of sound, in a small boat, and landed in the State of *Askarak*. Here I met with wonders entirely new ; for, unlike *Cabac*, which produces people without heads, here some of the inhabitants come into the world with no less than seven. These are commonly *universal geniuses*, of whom the ancients, in times of old, made very much, and worshipped, on account of this gift of nature, with almost a divine adoration ; so that they never appointed generals, or elected senators, burgher-masters, or lords-lieutenant of counties, of any other lineage than theirs. As they have just as many different schemes, projects, designs, plans, and ways of thinking, as they possess heads, they perform a variety of things correctly enough, with zeal and alertness ; yet while the reins of government were in their hands, there was nothing which they touched or altered : but as they put every thing in execution at the same time, and the multiplicity of different ideas in their heads very naturally and very easily made them fall into controversies and disputes with each other, they at length neither knew how to proceed or desist ; and their affairs, by degrees, became so involved in disorder, and so embarrassed,

that it required whole centuries to bring those things again into order, which the all-knowing authorities had so completely entangled. It was, therefore, once for all, ordained by law, that no seven-headed person, for the future, should ever be appointed to an important situation ; and that the State, from that time forward, should be directed solely by plain, simple persons ; that is to say, by those who possessed only a single head. Thus are those persons, who heretofore were of so much distinction, and looked upon as demi-gods, falling now into nearly the same degraded condition as the headless race in *Cabac*. For as they were not able to perform anything, because they had no heads, so these perform everything inverted, because they possess too many. The seven-headed gentlemen, in consequence, are for the present entirely excluded from all public situations, and therefore pass their time in quiet. Nevertheless, they serve as a kind of ornament to the State. They are carried about the country, like jugglers and mountebanks, to exhibit their tricks, and show the people how bountiful nature has been to them ; but had it been a little more sparing, and content with giving them only one head, it would have done much better. Of the seven-headed race, during my time, no more than three obtained employments ; nor would these have obtained their appointments, had they not before-

hand suffered six of their heads to be taken off, and in this wise again collected the many dispersed ideas, to form a sound understanding in the head which was left behind ; in the same manner as trees are lopped of their superfluous branches, that those which remain on the trunks may thrive the better. There are, however, very few who venture to submit to this excessively painful, and frequently mortal, operation. From this I was convinced, that too much, of whatsoever it may be, is always injurious, and that cleverness consists in regular and methodically-digested ideas in a single head.

From this nation I proceeded on through several deserts, until I arrived in the principality of *Bos-tanki*, the inhabitants of which, in their exterior appearance, much resemble the Potuites ; but in the internal conformation of their bodies they are widely different, for the heart is placed in the right thigh ; so that it may very truly said of them, that their hearts are in their breeches. They are also looked upon as the greatest cowards of all the inhabitants upon this planet.

I arrived, much out of humour, however, with the bad road, at a public-house, just within the gate of the town, and uttered some crabbed expressions to the landlord, who tired me with his

incessant talkativeness and demands to know what I desired to take. He fell down on his knees before me, and begged, with tears in his eyes, that I would be indulgent and forgive him; at the same time he thrust forward his right thigh, and requested I would feel how much his heart palpitated. At this I burst into laughter, and forgot the whole of my troubles and vexation. I dried up the tears of this poor, miserable sinner, and bade him compose himself, and fear not. He rose up again on his feet, kissed my hand, and then went away to prepare some repast for me. Not long after, I heard a most horrible shrieking and howling in the kitchen, which resounded through the whole house. I ran immediately out, and saw, to my great astonishment, this dastard of a host in full employ, soundly beating his wife and the servant-maids; but as soon as he perceived me, he took to his heels and made a precipitate flight. I then turned to the wife and maids, who were weeping, and inquired what fault or offence they had committed, to put this meek and peaceable man into so dreadful a passion. But they remained a long time motionless, with their eyes fixed upon the ground, and answered not a word, as if they were afraid of betraying their grief; but somewhile after, as I pressed my inquiry, and used both entreaties and threats, the wife at length broke silence in the



following words :—" My dear stranger, you seem not to have much knowledge of men. The burghers of this country, who dare not show themselves before the face of an armed enemy, and who are ready, at the least noise or alarm, to creep, through fear, into a mouse-hole, all rule the roast in their kitchens, and behave in the most tyrannical manner to us poor weak females. Against people who are armed, they never make war ; it is only the unarmed whom they dare encounter. Our country is, for that reason, exposed to continual ridicule, and the rapacious incursions of our neighbours. In the adjoining State, to which we are obliged to pay tribute, the men are quite otherwise disposed ; they never engage but with an armed enemy, never rule but abroad, and at home they are all submission and obedience."

I was astonished at, and admired, this woman's understanding, and was fully sensible that she deserved a better fate. In the course of time, after I had acquired a more accurate knowledge of the natural disposition of these people, I could not but acknowledge that what she said was perfectly true ; for we may see, by thousands of examples, that *Hercules* was not the only person who trembled at his wife's slipper, but that it is commonly the fate of all the greatest heroes to submit patiently to the tyranny of the fair sex ; while, on the con-

trary, the greatest cowards, who, like the *Bostankians*, have their hearts in their breeches, are heroes of the kitchen. This nation is under the protection of the neighbouring State, and on that account pays it an annual tribute.

I took my departure from this land in another boat, and proceeded to *Mikolak*, where, when I had got ashore, I missed a frock-coat that I had with me when I entered the boat. After I had for a long time in vain disputed with the ferryman, who obstinately denied the theft, I went to the magistrate of the town, and represented to him that I was at least justified in demanding my own again, although they denied me the right of prosecuting the ferryman for the coat committed to his charge, and which was stolen. But the magistrate not only remined steadfast in his refusal, but required even that I should be punished for bringing a false accusation. In this doubtful case, the Senate called for witnesses ; but as I was not able to produce any, I proposed that the ferryman should be put to his oath to prove his innocence. The Sheriff smiled at this, and said—" In this country, my friend, no religious attestation is at all admissible ; the laws are our gods. For that reason, evidence of this nature must be produced in a regular and legal manner, either in writing or by means of

witnesses. They who cannot bring either of these forward, not only lose their cause, but are condemned at the same time as false accusers. Prove the case by evidence, and you shall get back your property." Thus I lost my cause for the want of evidence ; but I pitied, on this occasion, not so much myself, as the condition of this State. For I clearly saw, from this circumstance, how slender are the rights of society, when they are merely founded upon human laws ; and how little solidity is there in the political structure that does not rest upon the basis of religion. I tarried here for the space of three days, but lived in continual fear. For notwithstanding the laws are excellent, and crimes are punished with the utmost severity, yet there is not, nor ever can be, any security hoped for in a country where no religion exists, and where the inhabitants are not scrupulous about committing every sort of crime, merely because they were enabled to conceal them.

From this country of atheists, I passed over a very lofty, steep, and craggy mountain, and arrived at *Bracmat*, which lies in a valley at the foot of the mountain. The inhabitants of this city are Juniper-trees. The first whom I met rushed upon me with the whole weight and force of his body, so that I fell backwards with a terrible shock ; and on my

demanding to know the reason of such a salute, he begged my pardon in a very polite manner, and in the most elegant and polished phraseology I had ever heard. Immediately after this came a second; holding in his hand a hedge-stake, which he pushed against my side with such violence, that I really thought I was hipshot; and he, in like manner, apologized for his improvidence, in a speech as subtle as it was amplified. I thought that this nation must be blind, or at least purblind, and therefore carefully made way for every one whom I met. But this defect arises, as I afterwards learned, from a too quick sight, which some of them possess, and in consequence of which they can discern objects very plainly at a distance which nobody else can see; but, on the other hand, are incapable of seeing any thing that is immediately under their noses, or close to their feet. These keen-sighted people are generally called *Makkatti*, and for the most part apply themselves to the study of astronomy and transcendental philosophy. For any terrestrial occupation, they are, in consequence of their piercing sight, almost entirely useless, because they only see through the very smallest trifle, and are, on the contrary, completely blind to every thing one can touch or feel. The State, however, employs them to examine the metal-mines: for, as indifferently as they see things upon

'the earth, just as particularly well are they capable of discerning every thing in the interior. I remarked, on this occasion, that these people, who are blind from being too hawk-sighted, would see better if their eyes were not so keen.

After having, with much difficulty, crossed a very steep mountain, I arrived in *Mutac*, the capital of which country has the appearance of a forest of willows, for all the inhabitants are Willow-trees. On reaching the market-place, I perceived a fine, well-grown young man, who was the picture of health, sitting upon a close-stool, and humbly imploring the Council, which was there assembled, to show their commiseration. When I inquired what was the meaning of all this, I was answered, that the young man was a malefactor, who was going to take to-day his fifteenth dose. Confounded at this answer, I went away, to endeavour to get from my landlord some elucidation to these obscure and enigmatical words. "We, here," said he, "are entirely unacquainted with flogging, branding, hanging, and such-like punishments, with which criminals in other countries are chastised; that is to say, because our intention is not so much to punish, as to correct and reform, the guilty. The malefactor, whom you lately saw seated upon the close-stool, is a pitiful author, whose maggot for

writing, neither the interdiction nor admonitions of the Sénate have been able to drive away or destroy, and he is now, on that account, undergoing public punishment or cure. The judges of the city, who are all doctors of physic, hit upon this method of tormenting him with one laxative after another, until the maggot leaves him, and he cease to write." A few minutes after, I came to the Apothecaries' Hall, and perceived there, to my utter astonishment, several earthen pots and jars set up in a row, with the following inscriptions on them: —*Avarice-powder ; Unchastity-pills ; Salve for Inhumanity ; Lenitive, or Qualifying Drops, for Pride and Arrogance ; Bark against Luxury and Voluptuousness, &c.* I cannot describe the giddiness with which I was seized on beholding these quacks' and jugglers' tricks. But I thought I should have gone completely beside myself, on seeing some bundles of manuscripts bearing the following titles: —*Magister Pisago's Sermons, which, if read in the morning, occasion Six Stools ; Doctor Yukes's Instructive and Entertaining Reflections, which promote Sleep, &c.* I looked upon this nation to be remarkably and preposterously silly ; but in order to prove more fully the power and efficacy of these medicaments, I opened the first of these books. It was so stupid, dull, and insipid, that I yawned before I had read the first page ; as I con-

tinued, however, to read, I felt a violent twisting and griping in my bowels, and before I had finished the second page, I was as full of wind as a person need desire to be ; but for the rest, as I was fresh and healthy, and in no wise relaxed in my body, I gave immediate vent to it, and hurried out of the place. From this I remarked, that there was nothing in the world which was entirely useless, and that even the most pitiful and insipid writings were serviceable in their way. This proved to me that these people, although of a very extraordinary kind, were not completely stark mad. Mine host assured me, that he had formerly been terribly tormented with sleeplessness by night ; but that he was perfectly cured of it, merely and solely by reading *Doctor Yukesi's* Reflections ; “ for this book,” said he, “ was so powerful and so efficacious a remedy, that it would even have lulled vigilance and wakefulness themselves to sleep. On hearing these and other remarks, my head was filled with the strangest and most surprising thoughts : but in order not to be interrupted in my original design, I quitted this land in the greatest haste ; which proved very fortunate for me, as new peculiarities and wonders, that I met with in those which I afterwards visited, did not allow me much time to consider them. But when I had finished my travels throughout this planet, and reflected with deliberation on the

Mutaccian philosophy, it appeared to me that the science of medicine, which was practised among the *Mutaccians*, was not to be entirely condemned. For I have often experienced, that we, here in Europe, have numbers of books, that in like manner affect the reader with nausea, drowsiness, and a laxity of body. But as to what concerns the disorders of the mind, I am not exactly of the same opinion as the Mutaccian doctors, although I allow that there are certain bodily infirmities which are confounded with those of the soul, and which one of the poets here above ground has judiciously noticed in the following epigram :—

“ With humours, friend, much to our smart,  
 We both have long been treated ;  
 Those me annoy are in my heart,  
 Yours in your legs are seated.  
 Whenever I refuse to sing  
 In comp’ny, I’m thought fearful,  
 The ladies call me proud, cross thing,  
 Because I am not cheerful :  
 But you, when you refuse to dance,  
 They readily excuse ye,  
 And pity’s seen in ev’ry glance,  
 No woman will abuse ye.  
 Betwixt us both thus stands the thing,  
 With singing and with dancing—  
 I have no heart at all to sing,  
 Nor have you legs for prancing.”



On leaving this country, I crossed over a flame-coloured lake, and arrived in *Mikrok*. I was desirous of entering the city which bears the same name, but, to my surprise, I found the gates locked. I remained a considerable time before the drowsy guard thought proper to take down the iron bars, unbolt, and open them. When I entered, I found that there reigned in the city the most profound quiet, except in so far that the snoring of the sleeping inhabitants made such a whizzing and humming in my ears, that I imagined myself to be arrived in the real abode of Somnus, which is described by the poets. I thought to myself, O! that several of the burgher-masters, senators, and other such-like honourable citizens of my father-land, had been brought up here! how these men, who are so careful and solicitous about their ease and quiet, would have enjoyed themselves in tranquillity and comfort in this most happy town! I noticed, however, from the signs and inscriptions against the houses, that the arts, trades, and professions, were here encouraged, and that many applied themselves to the study of jurisprudence. By the help of these signs, I found out an inn, but was obliged to remain for a long time on the outside, as the door was fast, and it was still night with the inhabitants, although the sun was high above the horizon. After knocking and kicking a long while with all my might, I

was at last admitted. I was informed that day and night were here divided into twenty-three hours, whereof nineteen were passed in sleep, and the other four in getting thoroughly awake. I concluded from this, that both public and domestic affairs must be very much neglected ; and therefore requested that they would bring me, with all speed, whatever eatables were first at hand, for fear the night should overtake the cook in the midst of preparing the dinner. But as every thing here is performed without many ceremonies, and all superfluity is discarded, the short day of the *Mikrokians* is sufficiently long for the performance of their several occupations. After the repast was over, which was served up quicker than I expected, my host attended me about the town. During our perambulation we entered a church, and hearkened to a sermon, which certainly did not last long, but was as energetic and as nervous as it was short. The orator never strayed from his text, used no circumlocution, no repetition, no redundancy ; so that I found his discourse, on comparing it with the sermons of *Magister Peter*, which so often tired me, to contain much more than the very longest of his. The affairs of justice are disposed of in the same summary way. The pleading barristers say much in a few words, and the witnesses are immediately called and examined. I remember, among other

things, a treaty on the occasion of an alliance that had been lately concluded between them and a neighbouring nation, which was drawn up in these words:—" *There shall be perpetual friendship between the Mikrokians and the Splendikians. The river Klimak and Mount Zabor shall be the boundaries between the States. Signed,*" &c. &c. In this wise, three or four lines with them, are sufficient to express that for which we require a whole volume. From this may be seen, that a person might come to the purpose with much less bustle and loss of time, if he only omitted all unnecessary circumlocution; and, like the way-faring man, would save half the distance by going in a straight direction. All the inhabitants in this country are Cypresses, and differ from other trees in having certain knots on their foreheads. These knots at certain times increase and decrease; and when their foreheads begin to swell, they, on the humours again subsiding to the eyes, are seized with a species of rheum or cold in the head, which announces the approach of night.

About a day's journey from thence lies *Makrok*, or, as its name denotes, *The Land of the Wakeful*, the inhabitants whereof never sleep. As soon as I had entered the town, I met a young person, who appeared to be in very great haste. I requested him,

very respectfully, to have the complaisance to show me a decent inn ; but he replied, that he was too full of business, and then went his way. All were in so great a hurry, that they did not appear to walk, but to run or fly through the streets and lanes, as if every one were afraid of arriving too late. I thought that a fire had broken out, or that some other great evil was brewing in the town, and continued sauntering about by myself, until I at length came to a building which, from the sign of it, I knew to be an inn. Numbers of people were here running up and down the steps of the door in the greatest confusion, and some fell down upon the ground through sheer fright ; so that I was obliged to wait nearly a quarter of an hour in the porch, before I could enter the house. I was immediately assailed with a thousand unmeaning questions. One asked me whence I came ? whither I was going ? how long I intended to stay in the town ? Another, whether I would dine alone, or in company ? in which room ? the red, green, yellow, or the black room ? up-stairs, or below in the parlour ? and a great many others. The landlord, who at the same time was clerk to an inferior Court of Justice, went out to superintend the dinner ; but quickly returned, and explained to me, with almost endless amplification and circumlocution, the concatenation of circumstances in a law-suit, which had already

lasted ten years, and was now going to be argued before the fourteenth Court. "I hope," said he, "that in the course of two years more, it will be terminated ; as there are now only two more tribunals, before no further appeal can be made." He left me much surprised at his speech, which was sufficient to prove to me that this nation was very busy in doing nothing. While he was absent, I took the opportunity of looking a little about the house, and perceived a collection of books, which, to judge from the number of volumes, was very considerable ; but in regard to their contents, extremely jejune and insipid. Among the folios, which were elegantly bound, I remarked the following :—

1. Description of *St. Kate's Church*, 24 volumes.
2. Siege of the Fortress *Pehunk*, 36 volumes.
3. On the Use of the Herb *Slak*, 13 volumes, with many plates.
4. Funeral Sermon over the Sheriff *Jaksi*, 18 volumes.

As mine host had now again returned, he entered into discourse with me concerning the state of the City, from which I was led to conclude, that the drowsy *Mikrokians* effected much more than the wakeful *Makrokians* ; as the first penetrate directly to the centre of any thing, while the latter only skim

over the surface. These people are also Cypresses, and, if we except the knots on their foreheads, they differ very little in their outward form from the inhabitants of *Mikrok*. But they have no blood, or regular fluid, in their veins, like the other trees upon this globe ; but, in lieu of it, they have a thick humour or mucus, which possesses the same property as quicksilver : nay, some even maintain that it is quicksilver, as it produces the same effect as mercury in the thermometer.

After a journey of two days I arrived in the republic of *Siklok*, which consists of two closely-allied States, that have very opposite laws. The first, which is called *Miho*, was founded by *Mihak*, an ancient and celebrated law-giver, and the subterranean *Lycurgus*. He strove principally, by the introduction of frugal measures, to strengthen the State, and rigorously forbade all prodigality. This province deserves, for that reason, and on account of its abstemiousness and frugality, to bear the name of *New Sparta*. But I was much surprised to find so many beggars in so well regulated a State, that seemed to pride itself so much on its excellent laws ; for which way soever I turned myself, I was sure to see a tree asking charity ; so that travelling here was extremely unpleasant and irksome. When I had more narrowly looked into the condition of this

country, I discovered, that the abstemiousness of the inhabitants was the true source of all their misery ; for as all pomp, excess, and profuseness, are banished, and the rich are not suffered to enjoy their riches, the common people sleep away their lives in indolence and extreme poverty, as they have no employment by which they can earn anything. I was convinced from this, that penuriousness and too much frugality produce the same effect in a State, as the stagnation of the blood in the human body.

In the second province, *Liho*, the people, on the contrary, live in great affluence, and spare no expense in gratifying their appetites and desires, and indulging their humours. For that reason the arts, sciences, trades, and professions, flourish everywhere : the citizens are encouraged to work ; whereby they not only avoid the sufferings of indigence, but even very often enrich themselves ; and if any are reduced to extreme want, it is always their own fault, for there is no lack of opportunities for each to earn his bread. Thus, the prodigality of the rich gives a kind of life to the whole State, in the same manner as the circulation of the blood affords health and strength to the members of the body.

Adjacent to this country is *Lama*, the renowned seat of the science of physic. This science is cultivated here with so much attention, that no one is considered a legitimate doctor, unless he has studied at the University of *Lama*. For that reason the town swarms so with physicians, that it is much more rare to meet a man than a doctor. There are whole streets that are filled with apothecaries'-shops, theatres of anatomy, and manufactories of chirurgical instruments. While I was once sauntering about the town, I met a little boy-tree, who was crying lists of births and deaths to sell. I bought one; and perceived, to my utter amazement, that in the preceding year one hundred and fifty trees were born, and that no less than six hundred had died. I was unable to conceive how Death could thus play his games in the Temple of Apollo, and therefore asked the boy, whether there had not raged, in the preceding year, an unusual epidemic fever or pest in the town? He answered me, that two years ago the mortality was still greater; and that this was the ordinary proportion between the births and deaths, as the latter were usually three or four times as numerous as the former, because the inhabitants were continually liable to mortiferous diseases; so that the town, were it not annually to receive an addition of popu-



lation from the provinces, would soon be empty. On hearing this, I considered it by no means advisable to remain here too long, and therefore made all the haste possible out of the town ; and the more anxious was I to depart, as the very sound of the words, doctor and anatomical instruments, from the time that I was in the land of philosophers, excited in me a constant horror. I set off running, and never slackened my pace until I reached a small hamlet, which lay from the town at the distance of about four thousand steps, and where the inhabitants are not liable to any bodily complaints, and consequently have no need of doctors.

I continued my journey ; and after the expiration of two days, I arrived in *The Land of Liberty*. The inhabitants in this country are their own masters, and consist of several families, who have neither magistracy nor laws. They compose, nevertheless, a kind of State ; and in cases of emergency, which concern the whole, they hold consultations with the elders, who constantly advise peace and harmony, and always endeavour to inculcate the first precept of nature :—*Do not unto others, what you would not that they should do unto you !* In every large, as well as small, town, stood the effigy of Liberty, carved out, treading under foot the bonds and chains of slavery, and over which

was this inscription :—*Golden Liberty*. In the first town through which I passed, everything appeared very quiet ; but the burghers wore certain bunches of ribbons, of various colours, that denoted the different parties into which the town was at that time divided. On the outside, before all the principal gates, sentinels were placed, all standing in order of battle ; for the armistice was at an end, and war was to commence again the following day. In consequence of this, I fled in the greatest anxiety out of the place, nor did I consider myself entirely free and out of danger, until I had got out of sight of this Land of Liberty.

Not far from this country lies *Jochtana*, before which, in consequence of the description I had heard of it, I trembled with fear, as I expected to find everything there more turbulent, unsafe, and in more disorder, than in the Land of Liberty ; since it had been related to me, that it was a rendezvous for people of every religion, and that all the learning, which was diffused throughout the whole globe, was here concentrated and taught publicly. As it then came into my mind, that commotions and disturbances are excited in most of the European States, through a diversity in religion, I scarcely durst venture to go into the capital, *Jochtansii* ; where there were as many different churches, forms

of worship, and sects opposed to each other, as there were public squares, streets, and lanes. But my fears were soon abated, on my perceiving that the most perfect harmony reigned everywhere, unmingled with the least dislike or aversion. In worldly matters they were all striving for the same end; they had but one mind, one work, one repose. For as it is forbidden, under pain of death, that the one prevent the other in the free exercise of his religion, or that any choler or resentment shall take place among the sects of the obstinate or refractory literati, so there is a diversity of opinions without animosity, controversies without quarrelling, and no hatred or malice; for there are no persecutions. There merely existed a perpetual, but at the same time decent and becoming, gown-mania among the different parties; for each sect strove, through leading an irreproachable life, and by an attention to good and inoffensive manners, to prove that their form of religion deserved the pre-eminence. In this wise administration of State, the Government took care that there was as little disorder occasioned by this diversity of religious opinions, as by the various shops in the market, or different manufactories, where they solely by their good articles and superior workmanship allure customers, without fraud, sway, detraction, or aspersion. Thus, all opportunity for dissension is prevented,

and a decent and becoming gown-mania, which is so beneficial to a State, is kept up among the burghers. Hence may be seen, that it is not a diversity of religion, but a persecution of the conscience, that creates all the broils and commotions, which in this respect are prevalent in, and destroy the internal peace of, other countries.

A certain learned *Jochtaneser* gave me a very circumstantial account of this nation's manners, government, and the reason of the prevailing tranquillity; to which I listened with much pleasure and attention, and imprinted all that he related deep in my memory. In the beginning, I made a number of observations and objections; but at length I found myself obliged to give up, in consequence of the superiority of his experience, by which he was able to prove, very evidently, his positions. As the truth appeared as clear before my eyes as the sun at noon-day, and as I was not so immodest as to deny my own senses, I was compelled to allow that freedom of thought was the true basis on which this quiet and harmony rested. I had, therefore, recourse to other weapons; and said that it was the duty of a legislator, on introducing any regulations into the State, to look more to the future than to the present happiness of the community, and not to mind so much what is of benefit or ad-

vantage to them in this life, but what is pleasing in the sight of God. To this he made the following reply:—"You deceive yourself, stranger! if you believe that God, the eternal source of truth, finds pleasure in dissembled worship and hypocritical adoration. In those nations, where all are compelled by law to believe one and the same thing, the door stands open to ignorance and dissimulation; for no one either will or dare discover his real opinion, but, on the contrary, will often acknowledge with his lips what his heart denies. Therefore the doctrine of Divine things is treated with so much indifference, and continues in its old way; no one gives himself the trouble to arrive at truth, and the priests themselves abstain from the study of theology, in order not to be branded with the name of heretic, and apply themselves to other sciences which they can cultivate with more freedom and less danger. Those persons are condemned, who swerve from the prevailing opinion; but dissemblers and hypocrites are abominable before the face of God, to whom an erroneous sincerity is more acceptable than a feigned confession of the true belief." When he had finished these words, I maintained a perfect silence, not daring any more to engage in a controversy with this acute and subtle people.

I had now spent nearly two months upon my travels, when I arrived at length in *Tumbak*,—a State adjoining the principality of *Potu*, and which I almost looked upon as my home; for here I perceived that my troublesome rambles were drawing fast to a close. The inhabitants, for the most part, are Olive-trees, and are a very devout and austere nation. In the first inn to which I came, I was obliged, although half famished, to wait, notwithstanding my repeated requests, full two hours for my breakfast. The cause of this delay was the landlord's unseasonable devotion, which hindered him from attending to any of his duties until he had concluded his matins. These having been some time ended,

---

he stalk'd in,  
Pale-fac'd and grumbling, with his hand beneath his chin;  
He brought a piece of bread, all green and blue with mould,  
And eke some carrion lamb, not quite a fortnight old,

But for this breakfast I was obliged to pay exorbitantly; and can affirm, that I never in my life met with so devout, at the same time so unconscionable, a landlord as this. I therefore thought to myself, that it would be better, if they were a little more sparing in their prayers, and a little less niggardly in their acts of charity and benevolence;

but I kept dissatisfaction to myself, and stilled my anger, well knowing that nothing is more dangerous, than to provoke heavenly-minded people. All the burghers of this town were rigid moralists and manner-rebuking Catos. They sauntered about the streets with their heads hanging on their branches, preaching against the pomp and vanity of this wicked world, and condemning every one, who enjoyed even the most innocent pleasures, to the bottomless pit of hell. They vilified everything with the most rigid austerity, even to looks and smiles ; and by an incessant inveighing against the conduct of others, they got the appellation of saints. As I was completely wearied out with the troubles and difficulties I had endured, and felt inclined to cheer my spirits and recruit my strength a little with innocent amusements, I was reprovèd for it throughout the whole town, so that every house seemed to be a confession-chair.

Several among them, when they saw that neither their admonitions nor reprehensions had any effect upon me, shunned me as they would poison or the plague. Not to detain the reader much longer with a description of this austere, gloomy, sullen, and morose people, I will only quote one example more, which is a true picture of their character, and from which a person will easily imagine to himself

all the rest.—A *Tumbakker*, whom I had known before, and with whom I was on terms of friendship at Potu, saw me by chance passing a public-house, and invited me in. As he had heard that I was accustomed to pamper and indulge myself a little, he reproved me with so much anger for my conduct and way of life, that my hair stood on end, and every limb of me began to tremble. In the mean time, while this my Cato was fulminating against me, we took a friendly glass together, and then a second, a third, and so on; until both our heads became so heavy, that we fell over backwards upon the floor, and were carried home half dead. When I had slept off the effects of this debauch, and had again recovered my reason, I reflected seriously on the religious zeal of this fanatic nation, and was convinced in my own mind, that such-like holy fervour ought to be attributed to the bile and ill-humours, rather than to true religious feelings. Meanwhile I considered it advisable not openly to declare this opinion to any one, and therefore quitted the place in silence.

After the expiration of two months, I at length arrived at home, much fatigued; for my feet, through perpetually tramping, were become so tender that I could scarcely stand upon them. I arrived again in Potu on the tenth day of Ash-month. The first



thing that I proposed doing, was most humbly to lay before the Prince my journal, which his Serene Highness ordered forthwith to be printed. I must here remark, that the art of printing, which the *Europeans* and *Chinese* pride themselves upon having invented, was here in use much anterior. The Potuites discovered so much taste in my Travels, that they were never tired of reading them. The young trees went through every street and lane in the town, crying, *Courier Skabba's Travels round the World!* Inflated with this good success, I now strove after still greater honours, and flattered myself with the hope of obtaining a particularly high and important appointment; but when I found that my hopes were vain, I again presented a petition to his Serene Highness, wherein I set my toils and labour in their proper light, and solicited a reward for my extraordinary services. The Prince, who was kind and beneficent, yielded to my prayers, and promised to keep me in his gracious remembrance: he kept his promise, but the favour consisted in a yearly augmentation of my former salary. I had fixed my mind upon a very different reward; I felt, therefore, by no means satisfied on this occasion; but as I durst not importune the Prince with any more petitions, I made known my wants to the Lord Chancellor. This particularly reasonable personage listened to my complaints with his

usual affability and courteousness, and promised to use all his influence in my behalf; but advised me, at the same time, to desist from so inconsistent and preposterous a request, and take a more correct measure of my own insignificance and slender judgment. "Nature," said he, "has been only a step-mother to you; you are entirely devoid of those talents which pave the way to important situations. A child must creep before it can go; and it is absurd to try to fly without wings. Granted, that you really obtained all that you so foolishly desire; in that case the laws would be infringed, and the Prince would everywhere be censured for it: be, therefore, content with your lot, and give up every hope which is contrary to nature!" For the rest, he acknowledged my services, and admitted that the constancy and perseverance with which I had encountered so many difficulties on my travels, were worthy of the highest commendation: "But it was not such-like services," added he, "which were sufficient recommendations to State employments; for if every fatigue that was endured, and every individual service that was performed, gave a claim to high appointments, then every painter and statuary—the one for his skill in painting, and the other for his ability in sculpture—would be justified in requesting to be elected senators. Services ought to be re-

warded ; but the rewards, at the same time, should be commensurate and suitable to the deed and the person, in order that the State may not suffer by it, and be exposed to ridicule." These remarks had such an effect upon me, that I remained perfectly quiet for some time after. But as I could not endure the thought of getting old in so mean an employ, I again had recourse to the desperate design, which I before had abandoned, of proposing a reformation in the affairs of State ; and thus, by an entirely new contrivance, at once to better my own condition and that of the country.

A short time previous to setting out on my travels, I examined, very attentively, the internal condition of the principality, in order to discover the most material defects in its political regulations, and the means by which the same might the best be remedied. From the condition of the province of *Kokleku*, I had learned that a State always totters, whenever females take part in the administration of its affairs ; for, as they are by nature frivolous and effeminate, they strive to enlarge their power and authority beyond bounds, and never give up until they have secured to themselves a perfectly absolute domination. I therefore resolved on making a proposition to exclude the fair sex from all public employments ; not doubting, by

setting the matter in its true light, and representing clearly the inconveniences which were necessarily combined with the old regulations, that I should get a majority of votes. It seemed to me an easy matter, to convince every one of the danger to which the male sex was exposed, if timely measures were not adopted to lessen the power of the females. In case it were found, that a perfect abolition of this custom would be attended with too many difficulties, I maintained, that the female regiment ought at least to be restricted to narrower bounds. In this proposition I had a three-fold design. First, I was inclined to give it the appearance of advising a remedy for an injurious defect in the State; secondly, I endeavoured, through that noble and profound contrivance of giving a proof of my penetration and judgment, to mend my condition; and thirdly, I hoped to have an opportunity of revenging myself upon the females for the wrongs, outrages, and sarcasms, of which they had so frequently been guilty towards me. I must candidly acknowledge, that my own advantage, and the desire of revenge, were the principal springs to this proposition; but I ingeniously kept everything *in petto*, that I might not seem, under the pretext of reforming abuses, to seek only my own advantage, and thus tread in the footsteps of all other projectors, who always make so much fuss about their propo-

sitions being for the general benefit of the nation ; but when the matter is seen a little deeper into, it is evident enough that they had nothing else in view than their own advantage.

I formed my plan with all the art of which I was master, supported it on the most solid foundations, and presented it most humbly to the Prince. He, who had continually given me proofs of his special favours, was struck with surprise, called it an impertinent and foolish project, and told me that it would certainly prove my ruin. He endeavoured, therefore, by means of prayers and representations, to persuade me to abandon it ; but—

— If to friendship's useless prayer,  
He'd join'd the scowling anger of a prince,

I still was not to be deterred from my purpose. I depended partly upon the benefit of my proposition, partly upon the support of the whole male sex, on whom I fully relied, and remained, in spite of every admonition, obstinate and fixed in my resolution. I was, therefore, according to law, conducted to the market-place, with a rope about my neck, to await the decision of the Council. All the Senators were assembled, and after they had given their votes, the judgment was dispatched to the Prince for his signature ; and from him it was again

sent back, and publicly proclaimed by a herald, as follows :—

“ After mature consideration, we have judged, and do judge, that the proposition made by the gentleman *Skabba*, principal courier to his Serene Highness, *to exclude the fair sex from all public employments*, cannot be received and executed without the greatest injury being occasioned to the State; seeing that one half of the nation, which is composed of females, must necessarily, on introducing this change, be incited to insurrection and rebellion, and thereby become inimical and dangerous to the Government. Moreover, we consider it unjust and unreasonable to deny to deserving trees of superior qualifications, admission to posts of honour; especially since it is not to be thought, that nature, which does nothing rashly, should, without design, have endowed them with so many extraordinary talents. We conceive, that in the distribution of appointments, the necessity of the State requires, that fitness and order should be more seen to than name. And as the country is not unfrequently in want of well-qualified subjects, we find it absurd, to declare at once, by edict or decree of the Council, the one half of the inhabitants unworthy and unfit for public situations, merely on account of their birth. After the most profound deliberation,

we are of opinion, and judge it to be the law and justice, *that the aforesaid Skabba should, for his preposterous and audacious proposition, suffer the usual punishment which the law awards in such cases.*"

The Prince was much concerned at my misfortune; but as he was never in the habit of altering the decrees of the Senate, he signed the judgment; and after having thereunto affixed his seal, he ordered it to be made public; but, however, with this commutation—that I, as an alien, who was born and bred in a foreign country, where an acuteness of understanding is looked upon as perfection, should, in consideration of this, have the punishment of death remitted. That the laws, however, might not, through such a noncompliance, lose any thing of their sacredness, I should remain in prison until the beginning of Birch-month; when I, together with the other malefactors, should be transported to the firmament.

When they had published the sentence, I was conveyed to gaol. Some of my friends advised me to protest against the judgment, on the ground, that there were many women and virgins among the judges, who had consequently judged in their own cause. Others thought it still more advisable

for me to acknowledge my error, and endeavour to exculpate myself on the ground of innate stupidity, as a national defect. But to this I was not to be persuaded, out of respect to my above-ground coteremporaries, whose dignity and reputation would, by such an acknowledgment, in no small degree have been lowered and stained.

Not long after, I was given to understand, that the Prince had resolved on remitting all punishment, provided I would only beg pardon for my offence ; notwithstanding the First Lord of the Treasury, the widow *Rahagna*, had opposed my being set at liberty with all her might. But, to tell the truth, I must acknowledge that I was not much displeased with my sentence ; for the office which was imposed upon me, was more odious to me than death, and I was disgusted and tired of having any longer intercourse with these trees, who were so inflated by their great store of wisdom. I hoped, notwithstanding, to make my fortune in the firmament, where all strangers, as I heard, were, without distinction, well received.



## CHAPTER X.

---

VOYAGE TO THE FIRMAMENT.

---

I HAVE hitherto mentioned nothing concerning the very wonderful banishment to the firmament, which, as a punishment, is put in practice by the Subterraneans ; I will, therefore, here, as the most suitable and convenient place, give the reader an idea of the voyage. Twice in the year some extraordinary large birds, which are called *Kupakki*, or *Post-birds*, regularly make their appearance. As they are in the habit of coming and going at certain fixed periods, the reason of these their punctual arrivals and departures has for a long time racked the brains of the subterranean naturalists. Some are of opinion, that certain insects, or uncommonly large flies, whereof at that season of the year there are vast multitudes, and to which these birds are particularly partial, entice them down to the planet ; and this conjecture seemed

to me not so very absurd. The circumstance, that the birds, on the disappearance of the flies, wing their flight immediately back to the firmament, puts the matter almost beyond a doubt; and that the like may really happen by a certain instinct, is proved by the example of other birds, which at appointed times, without doubt for the same reasons, make their appearance in certain countries. Others believe, that these birds are trained up and exercised in such a manner, by the inhabitants of the firmament, that they, like falcons and other birds of the chase, may be dispatched to other countries to fetch booty or prey. This opinion is grounded upon the great caution and dexterity with which they, after having performed the journey or voyage, set down their booty or passengers upon the ground. From other circumstances also, the Subterraneans come to the conclusion, that the birds must either be trained up by art, or they must be endowed with reason. Towards the time, for example, of their taking their departure, they become so tame and fondling, that they suffer nets and snares to be thrown over them, under which they remain perfectly quiet and almost immoveable for the space of several days. During this time, the inhabitants feed them with the insects whereof mention has lately been made, and of which they take care to collect beforehand a large stock;

and so continue to amuse and detain them with this food, until every thing is ready for sending the exiles away. The usual preparations made on these occasions are the following :—A kind of trough or oblong case is tied with rope fast to the snares wherein the birds are fixed. One of these cases is exactly large enough to contain a tree or man. When the time is arrived for their departure, and they find that they are supplied no longer with insects, they soar aloft, and fly through the air towards their home. In this manner was the wonderful travelling equipage disposed, which I and other prisoners were obliged to make use of in order to arrive in the other world.

Besides myself, there were two burghers from *Potu*, sentenced to banishment for other crimes, to be sent off at the same time. One of these was a metaphysician, who had transgressed the laws, in disputing concerning the essence of the Supreme Being, and the nature of ghosts. He had once, for this audacity, made an atonement by undergoing the punishment of phlebotomy; but as he was very soon after found guilty of the same crime, he was condemned to be banished to the firmament. The other was a fanatic, who, by casting a doubt upon the holiness of religion, and the obligatory power of the civil law, seemed as if he were inclined and

endeavouring to subvert both. He would not conform to the public regulations, because all civil obedience, as he said, was repugnant to his conscience. His friends strove, by all the means in their power, to persuade him to lay aside his caprice, representing to him how many errors chimerical revelations are liable to; how often zeal, conscience, and divine inspiration, are confounded with density of blood and corrupt humours; how absurd it is for a person to appeal to his own inward conviction; and how unreasonable it is to wish to make one's own feelings the guide for others in what they ought to believe, as they might insist upon the same right, and set conscience in opposition to conscience. They proved to him, that no one who obstinately maintained the principle that every one should regulate himself according to his own caprice, either could or ought to enjoy the prerogative of a freeman, as it is the duty of every good citizen to obey implicitly the laws of the country; and such obedience a fanatic, who, in all civil affairs, makes his own feelings his only rule, neither will nor can show. But as neither representations nor proofs had any effect upon this fanatic, he, as an obstinate and incurable madman, was sent into banishment. Thus were there three of us destined to make the same voyage; namely, a projector, a metaphysician, and a fanatic.

In the beginning of Birch-month we were taken out of prison, and conducted each to his appointed place. What became afterwards of my comrades I never heard; and I had enough to do to take care of myself, without troubling my head about others. As soon as I arrived at the place whence I was to take my departure, I was immediately clapped into one of these troughs or cases, with as much victuals as I should require to keep life and soul together for the space of some days. Very soon after, when the birds found that nothing more was given them to eat, they quitted the planet, in the manner already described, and flew through the air with incredible velocity. It is generally thought, in the subterranean regions, that the distance between the planet *Nazar* and the firmament, is as much as five or six hundred miles: I cannot positively say how much time I spent on the way; but it seemed to me, that my aërial voyage lasted no longer than about four-and-twenty hours. After a pretty long and tedious silence, my ears were at length assailed by a confused kind of noise, whence I concluded that I must be near the land. I now remarked, that these birds were undoubtedly trained up; for they set down the case, wherein I was packed, upon the ground, with so much care and so gently, that it did not receive the slightest damage. There crowded immediately around me an uncommon multitude of apes, which

put me into not a little fear, as these animals, during my stay upon the planet *Nazar*, were continually my greatest torment. My surprise and amazement were much increased, when I heard them conversing together, and saw them advancing with measured step, and clothes of many colours. From what I perceived, I concluded that these apes must be the inhabitants of that country; but as nothing, after being accustomed to so many incongruous and preposterous things, ought any longer to appear to me novel or extraordinary, I again cheered my spirits, and especially when I beheld them approach and take me, their new guest, out of the case, with all the courteousness, civility, and politeness, that can possibly be imagined. So great was the ceremony on this occasion, that it could hardly, by any means, be surpassed, on the reception of the grandest ambassador extraordinary, or plenipotentiary, from the most potent monarch in our world. They placed themselves in a circle round me, and advanced one after another, each accosting me with the two words—*Pul asser !* When they had a great many times repeated this welcome, I at length replied to their salutations in the same manner; at which they all burst into a most immoderate fit of laughter, and manifested, by their several ridiculous gestures, the inward pleasure they experienced, on hearing me pronounce their own words. I perceived imme-

diately, that these inhabitants were fickle, giddy, volatile, curious, inquisitive, and particularly loquacious. When they spoke, it sounded as if they beat on a drum, in so flippant and rapid a manner did the words, at a single respiration, roll out one over another. They were, in short, thoroughly the opposite of the *Potuites* in dress, manners, language, and shape of body. They appeared, at first, to be much surprised at my form ; but that which particularly excited their wonder was, that I had no tail; for as none among all the irrational animals have so great a resemblance of mankind as apes, they would certainly have taken me for one of their species, had I been adorned with that posterior decoration ; and the more so, as they remarked, that all the inhabitants who had hitherto arrived from *Nazar*, were so completely unlike themselves.

At the time that I arrived, it was everywhere high water, in consequence of the proximity of the planet *Nazar* ; for, in a manner similar to the ebb and flood with us being attracted and ruled by the motion of the moon, the ocean in the firmament rises and falls in proportion to the planet's distance from it.

Soon after my arrival, I was conducted to a

very magnificent house, the portico and hall of which were adorned with marble, and the rooms richly decorated with handsome looking-glasses, costly vases, and splendid carpets. At the door stood a sentinel, from which I concluded that the occupier must be something above a common ape. He was, as I afterwards learned, neither more nor less than the burgomaster of the city. He was extremely desirous of being able to converse with me, and therefore engaged several masters immediately to teach me the language. As I, at the expiration of a quarter of a year, could speak it pretty fluently, I hoped to acquire great esteem and admiration in consequence of my uncommonly shining abilities and excellent memory; but my teachers found me so stupid, and so dull of apprehension, that they lost all patience, and frequently threatened to leave me to myself. In the same way as I, upon the planet *Nazar*, in consequence of my bright and fertile genius, was ironically called *Skabba*, or the abortive, I, in this place, by reason of my very dull and heavy capacity, got the appellation of *Kakidoran*, which signifies *stupid* and *hebetated*; for those persons only are here esteemed, who can penetrate into, and immediately comprehend, a thing, and are capable of giving great loose to the tongue. While I was studying the ape-language, my landlord took me several times round in the



city, where I in every part observed much profusion, splendor, and prodigality. It was with both danger and difficulty that we got through the multiplicity of waggons, coaches, lackeys, running-footmen, and apes, that swarmed in all directions. But this was nothing in comparison with the overflow and superabundance that prevailed in the capital, where, as a middle point, all the pomp and vanity which mortals were capable of devising or inventing, seemed to be concentrated. When I was completely master of the language, my landlord brought me to that city; as he hoped, through so novel and extraordinary a present, to insinuate himself into favour with a certain great senator. The government of that country is aristocratical; the State is governed by the great Council, and all the senators are of the ancient nobility. They who are of mean extraction, can never hope to obtain any employment or post higher than that of head-borough, city registrar, or recorder of a small town or province. Now and then they push the matter so far, as to get themselves appointed burgo-masters; but, in such cases, particularly distinguished worth and merit are indispensable requisites. Through such means, my landlord had obtained his mayoralty; for he possessed so prolific a brain, that in the space of one month, he excogitated no less than eight-and-twenty projects;

and although none of them were so contrived or disposed, that the execution thereof could in the smallest degree be of any benefit to the State, they nevertheless furnished proofs of that fertility of genius, by which he had raised himself to so great a dignity ; since, in the whole subterranean world, projectors are nowhere so highly esteemed as they are here.

The capital of the republic is called *Martinia*, from which the whole country takes its name. The situation of it is charming, the buildings magnificent ; it enjoys a great deal of trade, and possesses an admirable naval establishment. In point of size, and the number of its inhabitants, it seemed, as far as I was able to judge, to be in no wise inferior to *Paris*. The crowd in the streets and lanes was so great, that we were obliged to fight our way through with our fists and sticks, in order to reach that side of the city where the president dwelt, to whom my landlord, the burgomaster, intended to make a present of me. Having at length arrived in the vicinity of that gentleman's house, my landlord went into an inn for the purpose of arranging his dress, that he might appear before his Excellency arrayed in a proper and becoming manner. There flocked immediately around him a whole host of servants, who are called *Maskatti*, or

decorators, whom every body is in the habit of employing previous to entering any of the senators' palaces. These servants brush the clothes, take out any stains there may be upon them, and, with a wonderful dexterity, put everything immediately, that is in the least wise deranged, even to the folds of the coat, again into the most perfect order. One of these *Maskatti* ran directly to the burgomaster, drew his sword from the scabbard, and polished it very bright. Another busied himself at the same time with tying knots of ribbon of various colours round his tail; for nothing in the world seems to be of so much importance to these apes as the adorning of this part of their bodies. There were senators, and especially the wives of senators, who, on highdays and holidays, were not able to adorn their tails for a less sum than a thousand rix-dollars of our money. The third *Maskatti* had a pair of compasses, with which he measured the clothes, in order to ascertain whether every part possessed its due and proper symmetry. The fourth attended with a bottle of kalydor, for the improvement of the complexion. The fifth passed his feet in review, and cut his corns in a very clever and chiropedistical manner. The sixth brought scented water, with which he besprinkled the burgomaster from head to foot;—and, in short, this one wiped him with a towel, that put the curls of his hair

into order, while another held a looking-glass before him ; and all this took place with the same care, exactness, and attention, that a geometrician in Europe is accustomed to observe in measuring and colouring his maps. Lord save us ! thought I to myself ; if so much care and pains be necessary for the smoothing, fashioning, painting, and polishing the gentlemen, what time and expense will there not be applied in the ornamenting of the ladies ! And certain it is, that the females of *Martinia*, in this respect, are not at all restrained within moderate bounds ; but they, on the contrary, by means of so many paints and washes, endeavour to conceal their bodily imperfections in such a way, that, on approaching them, the nose is always compelled to atone for the pleasure of the eyes. For when the sweat and other cutaneous oozings get mingled with the paints and scented waters, it may be compared with the effect produced by a cook in mixing many kinds of soup together ;—we know not of what the medley smells, we only know that it smells most noisomely offensive.

My landlord being polished, frizzled, painted, and adorned, in the manner already described, he took me, attended only by three servants, to the president's palace. As soon as he entered the antechamber, he pulled off his shoes, that he might not

stain the marble floor. He was obliged to wait, in this condition, a full hour before his arrival was announced; and even then he did not gain admittance until he had made some few small acknowledgments, whereby a person in this country is necessitated to ingratiate himself with the servants. The President was seated on an elevated, handsomely gilt chair. On beholding my landlord and myself enter the room, he burst into an immoderate fit of laughing, and then put to us so many silly and frivolous questions, that the perspiration started from my forehead in large drops. At every answer—

— Ay, even before the answer half was given,  
He laugh'd as if his monkey-sides he would have riven.

I opined, since the State had elected such a fool for its president,—or even vice-president,—of the great council, that madness must here be looked upon as merit, and this idea I communicated to my landlord. But he assured me that this was a man who was generally acknowledged to possess very extraordinary and distinguished talents; and whose superior genius was manifest enough to everybody, from the innumerable occupations, of entirely different natures, which he, at so youthful an age, was capable of managing. His comprehension

was so extraordinarily quick, that he, whilst at table with his glass in his hand, not only decided the most important affairs, but also, during dinner and supper, used to write a new ordinance between every law or statute. I took the liberty of asking, how long such an ordinance usually continued valid? "In general," answered my landlord, "as long as until the council thinks proper to repeal it."

When his Excellency had been babbling with me for about half an hour, and had suffered his tongue to run with the same glibness as we are accustomed to find in that of an European barber, he turned to my landlord and said, that he would take me as one of his servants, since he had perceived, by my very slow conception, that I must have been born

In Stupidity's land, where my tutors were asses,  
And where dull apprehension for cleverness passes;

and that I was consequently disqualified for every important employment. "I have also clearly enough," said my landlord, "perceived in him a certain innate sluggishness; but if he only have time allowed to consider a little within himself, he judges of a matter by no means so foolishly." "Yes, but of what service is that?" answered the

President ; “ here we want adroit people in office, as the multiplicity of business admits of no tardiness or delay.” When he had uttered these words, he began attentively to examine my bodily strength, and commanded me to lift a tolerably heavy weight from the floor. As I did this without any particular trouble, he said—“ Nature, which has been so sparing in regard to the faculties of your mind, has compensated you in this manner, by granting you corporeal power.” I was then ordered to withdraw, and remain a few minutes on the outside, where I was received by the servants with all possible politeness ; but at the same time was wofully importuned by their incessant chattering and ridiculous grimaces. They put so many questions to me respecting our world, that I was at last completely at a loss what answer to make : and notwithstanding I invented many things in my perplexity, still I could not satisfy their curiosity. At length my landlord returned, and informed me that it had pleased his Excellency to admit me among his attendants. From the preliminary discourse of the President, I was able in some measure to judge, that the appointment I had obtained was not of very great importance ; conjecturing, that it must either be that of porter or major-domo ; but on asking my landlord what the office really was, he answered me—“ His Excellency, as a particular

mark of favour, has appointed you his principal chairman, with a yearly salary of five-and-twenty *Stercolates*, (a *Stercolate* in *Martinia* is equivalent to about two rix-dollars,) and besides has promised, that you shall not perform this service to any other than himself and her Ladyship, his spouse." This answer was a thunder-clap to me. I represented to my landlord, in the most pathetic and forcible manner, how unjust it was to appoint a free-born being, descended from the human race, to such an employment ; but the servants, who flocked around me in troops, and were near killing me with their extravagant congratulations, interrupted my discourse. As all *Martinians* are giddy, trifling, and talkative, they never think for an instant of what they have uttered, and keep their tongues incessantly running. I was at length conducted into a small apartment, in which stood the supper ready served up ; and, after partaking of a moderate repast, I retired to the chamber destined to be my lodging-room.

I got immediately into bed ; but, on account of the commotion in my mind, I was not able once to close my eyes. At the haughtiness with which these apes regarded me I grew almost frantic, and it actually required a Spartan patience to put up with this derision. I bemoaned my unhappy fate, which appeared now much harder than when on the



planet *Nazar*, saying to myself—"If the great *Kadoki*, Lord Chancellor in the principality of *Potu*, were to come here, this most excellent and worthy man, who requires a whole month to make a decree, would hardly be taken any notice of. And how would matters go with *Palmka* in this country, where the senators compose laws and couch them in writing over the bottle?" After serious reflection, I was convinced that I had quitted the land of wise men, and was arrived in the abode of fools. Wearied out with these considerations, I fell at length into a profound sleep. How long I enjoyed this repose, I am not able exactly to say, as there is here no difference betwixt day and night. It is never dark, excepting at a certain time, when the planet *Nazar* comes between the firmament and the subterranean sun, which is thereby eclipsed. These obscurations are very remarkable, as the planet *Nazar*, which in its orbit passes pretty near the firmament, covers entirely with its shadow the disc of the sun. In consequence of the continual shining of this bright luminary, there is here no change of seasons. The inhabitants have, therefore, a variety of contrivances; as, for example, shady groves, refreshing walks, and caves below the ground, to shield them from the oppressive and unpleasant heat.

I was just awake, when an ape, who called himself my colleague, entered my room, having in his hand some ribbon and a false tail, which he very dexterously adjusted to my posteriors, to give me as much as possible the appearance of the other apes. He then told me to hold myself in readiness, as the President, in the course of half an hour, was to be carried to the Academy ; to which he, together with all the other senators, was invited to a public programma. It was a doctor's promotion, which was appointed to take place at fourteen o'clock in the forenoon. I must here remark, that although there is no difference betwixt the days and nights, the latter being always light, the former are nevertheless divided, with the help of clock-work or sand-glasses, into certain hours, half hours, and quarters, so that the day and night contain two-and-twenty Martinian hours. If it should ever so happen, that all the clocks of the town at once stood still, it would be impossible for the inhabitants to know how the time went, until they got them again regulated according to those of some other place ; for sun-dials they have none, nor can they ever have any, because, the sun being always in the zenith, and the rays consequently falling perpendicularly, there is no shadow ; and where there is a well dug, it is light all over. The year is deter-

mined according to the course of the planet *Nazar*, which goes round the sun in just one half of the time that the firmament does.

At fourteen o'clock, we carried his Excellency in a gilt sedan-chair to the Academy. On entering the auditory, we beheld several doctors and magisters seated in methodical order. As his Excellency passed, each rose from his seat and turned his tail towards him. This is considered a mark of respect; and for this reason so much care is taken to ornament their tails. These inverted salutations naturally appeared to me very absurd and ridiculous; for the turning of the back upon a person, is a mark, with us, of indifference and contempt: but every country has its manners. The afore-mentioned doctors and magisters were sitting on both sides of the auditory; and at the furthest end, directly facing the bar, was a pulpit, wherein he who was to take his degree was standing. Previous to the act of promotion, a disputation was set up, of the following title:—*Physical Inaugural Dissertation*, wherein the most important proposition—*Whether the Humming and Buzzing Noise of Flies and other Insects, be made with their Mouths or their Rumps?*—was exposed to consideration and demonstrated. The President had undertaken to support the first opinion; but his opponents

disputed it with so much warmth, that it was feared that this wrangling would at last terminate in a sanguinary fray ; to which it certainly would have come, had not the council risen, and with its authority damped the out-breaking quarrel. During the disputation, there was a continual playing upon flutes. The musicians managed the course of the debate, by sounding, in order to animate the disputants, when they began to flag, hard and violent notes ; and when their rage was getting to too high a pitch, soft and enchanting tones were sent forth from the instruments, by which it was immediately appeased. Very frequently, however, such-like means have no effect. For it is difficult to let one's-self be directed when matters of importance are treated on ; of which we have sufficient proofs in our world, where the disquisition and demonstration of intricate and complex propositions put the blood into a no less state of ebullition. In the mean while, this quarrel, which at one time assumed an appearance of murder and bloodshed, terminated with mutual eulogies and congratulations, in the same manner as in our Academies, where, according to an anciently-allowed-of custom, the President always quits the rostrum victoriously.

The disputation being ended, the act of promotion took place with the following ceremonies :—The

candidate was seated on the floor in the centre of the auditory, where three vergers, or officers of the Academy, advanced with measured step, and threw over him a pail of water ; they then perfumed him with incense, and gave him a diuretic, an emetic, and a cathartic. This they performed with all possible solemnity and reverence ; and then bowing down their heads, they proclaimed him a worthy and lawfully created doctor. As I was extremely astonished at these strange and extraordinary ceremonies, I turned to a learned ape, who was standing by my side, and asked him the signification of what I beheld. He pitied my gross ignorance, and said, that the water, incense, emetic, &c., signified, that he should be cleansed from all the old stains and impurities belonging to the commonalty, before he entered on his new and exalted way of life. On hearing this, I was much provoked at my own stupidity, and, filled with admiration, I ventured not to ask another question, in order that it might not be observed that I had never till then been among decent people.

The ceremony being now ended, an alarm was sounded, of drums, fifes, and trumpets. The new doctor left the auditory in a green gown, with a belt round his body, and was followed home by the whole learned troop : but as he was only of com-

mon extraction, he was not carried in a sedan, but drawn in a cart, by two running-footmen dressed in long kirtles, the wrong side before. The solemnity terminated, as usual, with a sumptuous banquet, at which all the guests got completely drunk ; for they partook so freely of the bottle, that the greatest part of them were carried home in a state of intoxication, and were for some days after obliged to take medicine in order to get themselves to rights again ; so that through the whole drama there was nothing performed, from the beginning to the end, but what was perfectly solemn ; and I can affirm, that I have never witnessed a more regular academical promotion, or seen a candidate admitted to a doctor's degree in a more lawful manner, in our world.

In their courts of justice they decide matters with wonderful celerity ; so that I really could not sufficiently admire the easy and quick comprehension which is peculiar to this people. Very often the judges rise long before the advocates have done speaking, and come to a decision so quickly, and with so much elegance of language and gracefulness of manner, that it is quite a pleasure to hear and behold them. I used frequently to attend these courts, in order to acquire a knowledge of the Martinian mode of legal procedure. In the be-

ginning, the verdicts appeared to me always just and grounded on natural equity ; but on closer consideration, I found them so unjust, foolish, and contradictory, that I would much rather let the issue of a cause depend on the cast of a die, than leave it to the decision of the judges of *Martina*. Respecting the laws I can say nothing, on account of the mutability to which they are subject ; for both the law and equity of the country are here yearly altered, in the same manner as old fashions are abolished and new ones introduced, so that many are punished for actions which were not prohibited when they committed them. For this reason, appeals are made from the lower to the higher courts, as it is hoped, that during the course of the process the law applicable to their case may be repealed. This fault arises from the too hasty manner in which these laws are drawn up. Add to this, that this nation has so great a relish for everything which is novel, that it is disgusted even with the most beneficial laws and regulations, as soon as they become old. I observed the same fickleness in regard to their dress and ornaments.

The advocates are here very highly esteemed for their subtle manner of disputing. There are some, who know how to manage matters so

well, and to extricate their clients from the greatest difficulties, that they never undertake any other than doubtful and unjust causes, in order to prove their address, and to show how ingeniously they can change black into white. The judges are glad to see an unjust cause defended with subtilty and acuteness ; and provided the process be only conducted with every formality, they are perfectly satisfied. On such occasions, they are accustomed to say—"We see and know that the cause is unjust, but since it is defended with so much skill and legal ingenuity, we cannot omit, in consideration of the barrister's assiduity and diligence, to swerve a little from the rule of justice."

The doctors of laws give instructions in their science at different prices, according to the nature of the case. Those, for example, who teach how to plead and gain unjust causes, receive twenty *stercolates* ; and those, on the contrary, who teach the pleading of just causes, take only ten. The formalities of the law are so many and so tediously prolix, that a person, through the prodigious number of laws and ordinances, accumulated one upon another, can never come to the bottom of this science ; for in consequence of the extraordinary acuteness, quickness of apprehension, and penetra-



tion, of the *Martinians*, they nauseate everything that is simple and perspicuous, and have only a relish for that which is subtle, intricate, and confused.

The same holds good in respect to their religion, which is by no means practical, but merely speculative. Thus have they two hundred and thirty different opinions as to what form is to be ascribed to the Almighty; and three hundred and ninety-six regarding the nature and properties of the soul. The *Martinians* never go to church, or into any theological college, for the purpose of hearing anything instructive or edifying, or to learn how to live and end their days correctly; but merely to hear with what ability and acuteness of judgment the religious orators express themselves. The more unintelligible the compositions are, the more are they eulogized; for the *Martinians* listen to no discourse with pleasure, unless it be incomprehensible.

They concern themselves not so much about the subject, as about the words; and their orators aim more at the use of elegant phrases and inventive and elaborate turns, than at well-grounded ratiocination and well-perpended proofs: striving, merely by harmonious periods, to tickle the ear, and gain the approbation and attention, of the audience.

I therefore ventured not to mention a syllable here regarding the Christian religion ; the doctrines of which are distinguished by evident simplicity, and plain and unembellished truth.

The repute in which projectors stand in this place, surpasses all description ; and the more preposterous and impracticable a proposal is, the surer it is of meeting with general approbation. As I was once talking with a certain ape concerning the nature and properties of the earth, and told him that its surface was inhabited, the idea immediately struck him to dig through the shell of it, and pave a way to the super-terrestrial people. He delivered in his proposal, which was everywhere approved of, and shortly after a *Supra-terraneous Trading Company* was established, to which the inhabitants flocked in great numbers, and contended with each other in buying up the shares. But as everything, through this commotion, got into disorder and confusion, and several families, by holding these shares, were reduced to the utmost want, it was at length seen, that the project was absurd, and the undertaking was consequently abandoned. Notwithstanding the injury and loss which this plan had brought upon the country, the projector not only received no punishment, but, on the contrary, on account of his greatness and confidence in himself,

was everywhere loaded with praise ; for the *Martinians* are accustomed to say on such occasions—

If the result has turned out sad,  
The idea was still not bad.

As I had thoroughly studied the character of this nation, I was bent upon profiting by its weakness, in order to bring myself into notice in the country, that I might in some way or other better my condition. On examining the constitution of the State, I discovered in it several errors and defects : I found, in particular, that they had too many artists, and too few craftsmen. I therefore handed in a proposition for establishing more mechanics for the public benefit. But all proposals of that nature only excited laughter and contempt among this vain, frivolous, and haughty people, who found pleasure only in trifles and toys.

I was much offended at my own stupidity, and thought to myself, Thou art indeed an arch-block-head, and deservest to remain a sedan-chair-horse until the day of thy death ! I, however, never suffered my courage to sink ; and as I perceived that I effected nothing by beneficial projects, I determined on trying whether, by means of an absurd and useless invention, I might not be enabled to make my fortune. I made known my design to

a very discreet and judicious ape, who encouraged me with these words—

A thing recommended, which the neck may endanger,  
But racks not the brains, then it surely will take;  
The more it's absurd, take my word, as a stranger,  
That by it your fortune you surely will make.

He cited examples of many, who, by mere gewgaws and children's playthings,—especially by introducing new fashions,—had got into great favour with the nation. I therefore immediately resolved on being mad with the mad; and for this purpose, with careful and attentive examination, I passed in review all the useless contrivances and preposterous inventions which I recollected in Europe. After mature consideration, my choice fell upon those ornaments for the head which we call *Perriwigs*. I perceived that the country abounded in goats, of the hair of which I conceived it possible to make these wisdom-holding coifs; and as my step-father, of blessed memory, had followed this profession, I was able, in a case of necessity, to work in a bungling manner a little at the business. I then set about and made a wig of goat's hair, that fitted myself, and in this ornament I appeared before his Excellency the President. He was much surprised at this novel and uncommon sight, asked me what it meant, took it

off my head, put it on his own, and ran straight to the looking-glass to see how it became him. He was so highly delighted at seeing himself with this attire on his head, that he exclaimed in eectasy :—  
*“ Divine! A perfect image of the gods !”* and sent for her Ladyship, his wife, to participate in his joy. She, who was not less glad on this occasion than himself, embraced and kissed him, and assured him that she had never in her life seen him look half so handsome; in which opinion all the inmates and domestics of course agreed. His Excellency then turning to me, exclaimed :—*“ O Kakidoran !* if this invention of yours only please the Senate as much as it pleases me, you may fully rely upon receiving an honourable reward from the State.” I most humbly thanked his Excellency, and delivered to him soon after, a petition, which I entreated him to lay before the Senate, wherein I expatiated on the excellence of my invention in the following style :—

“ To their Excellencies, the most high-born and illustrious, right honourable, right noble, discerning, discriminating, very judicious, and most learned Senators ;—

“ The natural inclination which I have always felt of proving myself of service to the State, and of effecting something for the general advantage,

has prompted me to invent and fabricate a new, and hitherto entirely unknown, *cover for the head*, which I herewith most humbly present, and submit to the inspection, examination, and judgment, of your most illustrious, enlightened, and right honourable Selves, in Council assembled ; not doubting that the same will be graciously received—especially as the invention aims at the ornament, honour, and glory, of the nation, and will prove to the whole world, that as much as the renowned *Martinians* are distinguished among all the nations in the universe for their superior virtues and faculties of the mind, just as much do they surpass all others in dress and exterior ornaments, which give to the person both dignity and grandeur. I affirm solemnly, that in no respect have I in view either profit or emolument, and therefore desire not the smallest reward for my labour ; being perfectly satisfied with having, to the best of my abilities, contributed to the public benefit and the honour of the State. If, however, the illustrious and very judicious Council should, in its wisdom, find that my feeble efforts are deserving of reward, I shall with gratitude and joy accept of a favour, which will show the world at large its distinguished liberality, and will encourage others to strive at similar or finer inventions of art. Solely from that consideration, I will not oppose the gratuity and beneficence

of the illustrious and very judicious Council, and of the generous people of Martinia. Recommending myself to the favour and benevolence of the most enlightened and illustrious Senators,

“ I remain,

With the most profound reverence,

“ The right honourable and right noble Council’s  
most humble and most obedient Servant,

“ KAKIDORAN.”

“ *Martinia, the 7th of the Month of Astral.*”

His Excellency the President took this petition, together with the wig, to the Senate with him. I was informed, that all other business intended for that day was postponed, so very busy was the Council in examining this new invention. When the motion was made for a division, they almost simultaneously and unanimously bestowed great encomiums on the invention, declared the work to be a master-piece, and adjudged a reward to the modest and disinterested artist. In the whole Council there were only three Senators who opposed it; but they fell, in consequence, into ill repute, and were condemned as ignorant, void of taste, and useless members.

As soon as the resolution was passed, I was called up into the Council-chamber. On my entering,

an old ape rose from his seat, and after having thanked me in the name of the whole republic, and announced to me that my work should be rewarded according to its merits, asked me how much time I required for making such an ornament for the head? I answered him, that I considered myself amply and sufficiently rewarded, in finding that my invention and workmanship had met with the approbation of so great a personage as himself, and that of the whole Senate; and that I would engage to make, in the course of two days, another periwig like that; and further, that if they would allow me the help of some apes who were accustomed to handiwork, I would, within a month, furnish periwigs to the whole city.

But the President, on hearing this, became very red, and exclaimed with much vehemence—"God forbid, my dear *Kakidoran*, that this ornament should be in general use in the whole city, and, in consequence of being worn by every one, without distinction, should become common! It is necessary that the nobility possess something by which they may be distinguished from the commonalty." All the most eminent and respectable members concurred with him in opinion, and the superintendent of police was charged to look to the observance of this resolution of the Senate, that the nobility, by



too general a use of periwigs, might not lose anything in their privileges, nor so excellent an ornament be polluted by the common people. But this interdiction had the same effect as all orders that are issued in regard to difference of rank and extravagance are wont to have,—the commonalty was so much the more eager to infringe it. As everybody was highly delighted with this ornament, the opulent citizens, partly through the influence of their friends, and partly by means of money, obtained titles or patents of nobility ; so that within a short period half of the town was ennobled. As applications from the provinces poured in afterwards so quickly one upon another, the Council at length thought it the most advisable to repeal this interdiction, and allow every one, without distinction, to wear a periwig. I had, therefore, the pleasing satisfaction of seeing the whole of the Martinian nation *bewigged* before I left the country. And verily a person can hardly imagine to himself what a droll and ludicrous sight it was to see these apes with periwigs on their heads ! The whole nation made so much of this invention, that a new chronology was in consequence introduced ; and from that time, according to the Martinian annals, begins the *Age of Periwigs*.

With regard to myself, I was loaded with eulogies

and panegyrics, covered with a purple robe, and borne from the Senate-house in the President's sedan-chair; so that the same chairman, who had so lately been my comrade, was now obliged to be my horse. From that day forward I dined constantly at his Excellency's own table. After this glittering prelude to my fortune, I commenced the work which I had promised, and made, with the help of the fellow-workmen whom they sent to me, within a short time, as many periwigs as were required for the whole Senate; who, after the lapse of a month, during which time I was in a continual stew, caused to be delivered to me a patent of nobility of the following tenour:—

“ In consideration of the very excellent invention, which is likely to prove highly beneficial to the State, and with which *Kakidoran*, born in the town of *Europe*, has obliged the Martinian nation, we have resolved to raise him to the rank of nobility; so that he, and his posterity for ever, shall be looked upon as true and lawful noblemen, and enjoy all the prerogatives, privileges, and rights, which the nobility of *Martinia* is in possession of. Further, we have resolved to honour him with a new name; so that he, from this day, shall no longer be called *Kakidoran*, but *Kakidorian*. Moreover, as his new dignity will occasion a more expensive way of

life, we give and grant unto him a yearly pension of *two hundred patares*, to support his rank in a manner suitable to, and becoming, the character of a Martinian nobleman.—Given and passed at the Senate-house in *Martinia*, the fourth day of the month of *Merian*, under the Great Seal of the Council.”

Thus, from a miserable chairman, I became suddenly metamorphosed into a celebrated nobleman, and lived a long time in splendour and honour. As it soon got wind that I was in particular favour with the President, every one was courting my goodwill and protection. The gross flattery and fulsome adulation of these people went so far, that they made odes and hymns about me by scores, wherein they ascribed virtues to me of which I had not the most distant idea. Many, although they knew well enough that I was born in a world entirely unknown to them, were not scrupulous at making my genealogical table, and tracing my family back through numerous generations, even up to the earliest times mentioned in fable. But this I did not particularly relish; for I do not consider it altogether so very honourable to be descended from apes. And further, as it was the fashion among the *Martinians* to cry up the tails of quality, well nigh in the same manner as the poets with us extol the beauty of the females, several of the

rhymers, in order to ingratiate themselves with me, celebrated the extraordinary beauty of my tail, notwithstanding I had none. To sum up in a few words: their creeping, cringing, and fawning, were carried to such an extremity, that a certain man of tolerably high rank, whose name, out of respect to his family, I shall forbear to mention, was not ashamed to offer me his wife to enjoy in every way I pleased, on condition that I, as a remuneration, should recommend him to the notice of his Excellency the President.

This vile creeping and dissembling, to which the whole of the nation is addicted, render it quite impossible for any one to endure to read the Martinian annals; since they contain scarcely anything else than pitiful and fulsome adulations and panegyrics, notwithstanding they are written in a style that is terse and elegant. On this account, the country produces much better poets than historians. It is quite certain, and a thing admitted, that there is no place in the world that abounds in so many sublime poets as this, which is attributable to the uncommonly strong imaginative faculty of the *Martinians*.

I enjoyed here, for the most part, very good health, although the heat, by reason of the continual

presence of the sun, was rather oppressive. I lay once sick of a burning fever, which was, however, but of short duration; and I must acknowledge, that the doctor who visited me was much more intolerable than the disease itself, in consequence of the incessant loquacity which is peculiar to this people. The first time that he paid me a visit, I was not able to refrain from laughing; and seeing that it was the same person who had lately taken off my beard, I asked him how it came to pass that he was so quickly metamorphosed from a shaver into a *Doctor Medicinæ*? He answered me, that he lived by both these professions. On hearing that, I was somewhat scrupulous about trusting my life in such a poly-histor's hands, and told him that I would rather have a doctor who devoted himself entirely to the science of physic; but he assured me, positively, that such a person was not to be found in the whole city. I saw myself therefore necessitated to take him. The extraordinary hurry in which he appeared to be, excited my astonishment in no small degree; for no sooner had he prescribed a draught for me, than he went away, saying that, on account of other avocations, he had not time to stay any longer with me. I asked him what other occupations he had, which were so pressing? He replied, that at that hour he must go and perform his ordinary occupa-

tion in an inferior Court of Justice, to which he was clerk. This custom of having so many irons in the fire was, as I observed, everywhere common throughout the country, where no one is backward in undertaking various employments of an entirely opposite nature. This self-confidence is grounded upon that quickness of intellect which enables them to execute everything with such wonderful celerity. But, from the many errors and blunders which were here daily committed, I was fully convinced that these bright geniuses are of more ornament than benefit to a State.

When I had resided in the country for the space of about two years—in the beginning as *Chairman*, and afterwards as a *Nobleman*—an entirely unexpected event occurred, which had nearly given me the finishing stroke. I had hitherto stood particularly high in favour in his Excellency's house ; and especially her Ladyship, the President's wife, had always shown me so much kindness, that I seemed to be the first among all her favourites. She had often deigned to speak with me in secret : and although she appeared to find extraordinary pleasure in my company, she nevertheless observed so much caution, reserve, and modesty in her discourse, that I could do no other than look upon the favours which she showed me in the most innocent light ; not

entertaining the least suspicion that the source of all this civility and politeness was an indecent and highly unbecoming propensity—especially in a lady who was distinguished among the female apes as much for her virtues as for her noble descent. But after some time had elapsed, an ambiguity in her words caused me to entertain a very different opinion ; particularly when I remarked,

That sometimes, when with sweet and pleasing smile,  
Whose brightness would by tears become obscured,  
She gazed at me in silence ; and the while  
I saw the anguish that her soul endured,  
And mark'd the palpitations of her breast,  
Which, pregnant with disquiet, beat so high,  
And which with troubles seem'd to be oppress'd,  
Seeking relief in many a bitter sigh.  
And sometimes would, upon her beauteous face,  
In sweet suffusion, hang the morning-red ;  
The lily's paleness then away would chase  
The rosy hue, that on her cheek was spread :  
And she, while struggling with an overwhelming pain,  
By turns grew red, then pale, then red, then pale again.

All that I had conjectured, became at length, on receiving the following note, brought by a waiting-woman, a perfect certainty :—

“ Most beloved *Kakidorian* !

“ The consciousness of what I owe to my rank

and exalted birth, and the bashfulness that is natural to my sex, have hitherto prevented the sparks of love, which have smouldered in my bosom, from bursting forth into an open flame. But I am faint and weary with struggling, and my heart can no longer withstand the fascinating enemy. Have compassion on a female, from whom only the highest degree of ardent love could have extorted this confession.

“ PTARNUSA.”

I am not able to describe how wondrously I kept myself within bounds, on the occasion of this unexpected declaration of love. But as I considered it better to expose myself to the revenge of a furious and disappointed lady, than to commit a sin which was repugnant to nature, by a shameful commerce with a being that was not of the same species as myself, I immediately wrote an answer, which, as near as I can recollect, was of the following tenour:—

“ Most gracious Lady !

“ The constant good will which his Excellency your husband has shown towards me ; the benefits which he, without my meriting them, has bestowed upon me ; the moral impossibility of complying with your gracious request ; and innumerable



other reasons, which I shall not name; have induced me to expose myself to the wrath and displeasure of your Ladyship, rather than consent to an action which would stigmatize me as the most ungrateful and the basest of all the biped race. Besides, that which is desired of me, is worse to me than death; and the affair, were I to yield to it, would redound to the dishonour and disgrace of one of the most illustrious families in the State; and my compliance would injure that person who requested it, far more than any other. I must here declare, most gracious Lady, with the most solemn assurance, that although I can by no means, in that respect, comply with your Ladyship's desires, I nevertheless promise, to all other of your Ladyship's commands, the most implicit obedience.

“ KAKIDORIAN.”

At the foot of the letter I wrote the following admonitory lines:—

P. S. Consider the sin you're committing!

Fly from it, and yield no compliance!

In a wife it is always befitting

To set Cupid's wiles at defiance.

If you in his snares he should capture,

The bonds then of duty he'd sever;

Though pleasures of sin might enrapture,

You'd rue them for ever and ever!

This answer I sealed up with my own seal, and gave it to the waiting-woman, who carried it immediately to her mistress. It produced the effect which I had conjectured: her love was changed to the most deadly and insatiate hatred—

In vain, her otherwise fascinating tongue  
 Strove hard to pour forth torrents of reproach ;  
 But on the lips shame stifled ev'ry word.  
 No tears would start ; for poignant grief repress'd them :  
 While from each eye, with wild, terrific glare,  
 Revenge ferociously would flash ; and she  
 Her inward rage would like a demon show.

She, however, deferred the execution of her revenge, until she had obtained possession of the billet-doux which she had written to me. As soon as she had got hold of it, she suborned several persons to attest on oath, that I, during his Excellency's absence, had attempted to commit a rape upon her. This story was embellished and represented with so much art and plausibility, that the President entertained no doubt regarding the truth of it, and gave orders that I should be immediately put into prison. In this desperate condition, I saw no other means of saving myself, than by owning the alleged crime, and imploring the President's mercy ; by which I hoped to appease his wrath, or at least get the punishment mitigated ; for the involving myself

in a legal process with one of the first and most powerful families, especially in a country where the merits of an affair are not so much regarded as the rank of the parties, I conceived would be worse than madness. I therefore made no defence, nor did I seek to justify or exculpate myself; but supplicated, wept, and implored, not that the punishment should be entirely remitted, but that the rigour of the law should be relaxed—that a mitigation might ensue.

Thus, by owning myself guilty of a crime of which I had never even dreamt, my life was spared, and I was condemned to perpetual imprisonment. I was immediately deprived of my patent of nobility, which was torn in pieces by the hangman, and I was dragged away and sent as a slave on board of a galley. It was one of those vessels belonging to the republic which then lay ready for sailing to *Mezendores*, or the *Regions of Prodigies*; whither the voyage is usually undertaken at a certain time of the year, namely in the month of *Radir*. Such commodities as *Martinia* itself does not produce, are fetched from these countries, which are, as it were, the *Indies* of the Martinians. The *Mezendorian Company* is composed of merchants, some of whom are nobles, and others burghers, who, on the arrival of any of their ships, divide the cargoes among

themselves, in proportion to the number of shares that each may hold. The vessels are propelled, partly by the wind, and partly by the means of oars, to each of which a slave is chained : and I was one of these unfortunate beings. A person will easily imagine to himself what my feelings must have been, at seeing myself compelled to tug, and to submit to the floggings experienced by a galley-slave ; and particularly when I had committed no crime for which I deserved to be placed among malefactors.

The *Martinians* pronounced, according to the diversity of their ideas, different judgments on this adventure. Some were of opinion that I deserved my punishment ; but when they saw me undergoing it, they then had compassion upon me. Others thought that my former services ought to have been taken into consideration, and that my punishment, in consequence, should have been remitted ; or at least much mitigated. The most upright and honest among the apes muttered and whispered to each other, that I was falsely accused ; but no one dared to interest himself in my behalf, for fear of my powerful adversaries : so I resolved on bearing my hard fate with patience. The greatest consolation which I now experienced in my wretchedness, was the contemplation of the

approaching voyage, upon which I hoped always to find new food to my insatiate curiosity, notwithstanding I did not give credit to all that the sailors related concerning those wonderful things which I should have an opportunity of seeing ; nor could be persuaded to believe, that there was in nature such an immense variety of great prodigies, as must necessarily be the case, according to the description given of them. We had several interpreters on board, whom the Mezendorian Company employs on these voyages to negotiate in the purchase and sale of their merchandize.

## CHAPTER XI.

---

 VOYAGE TO THE REGIONS OF PRODIGES.
 

---

BEFORE I proceed to give a description of the voyage, I must first beg of all severe and merciless critics, not to wrinkle their brows too much and look sour at a relation of things, which may seem repugnant to nature, and to surpass even the most credulous man's power of belief;—for

My book with empty names I shall not fill ;  
 No spangle-wit, no turgid style, I'll use ;  
 I'll use simplicity,—aye, that I will !  
 For information, friends, not to amuse  
 I write, and therefore all is stamp'd with truth ;  
 Have mercy, then—have tenderness—have ruth !

The things which I am now about to relate, are certainly incredible, but nevertheless true ; for

I beheld them all with my own eyes. Raw and ignorant ninnyhammers, who have never set foot out of the town or village wherein they were born, will, perhaps, look upon all this as fabulous, they never having either heard or seen the like since the day of their birth ; but the learned world, and especially those persons who possess some knowledge of natural history, and have learnt from experience how fruitful nature is in variety, will pronounce a widely different and more reasonable judgment upon those extraordinary things which are about to be related to them.

In times of yore, there were men found in *Scythia*, the so denominated *Arimaspi*, who had but one eye, which was placed in the middle of the forehead. Others in the same region had their feet turned the wrong end first. In *Albania* there were men born, who from their childhood had grey hair. The ancient *Sauromati* ate only every third day, and fasted the other two. In *Africa* there were found certain families, who possessed the power of bewitching people with their talk. It is a well-known matter of fact, that there were in *Illyria* certain persons who had two eye-balls in each eye, who killed people simply by staring long at them when they were angry. Upon the mountains of

*Hindostan* whole nations have been met with, who had the heads of dogs, and who barked ; and others who had eyes behind. In the most remote parts of *India*, it has also been discovered, that the bodies of the inhabitants are of lead, and are feathered after the same manner as birds ; who eat no victuals, but subsist entirely upon the fragrance arising from flowers. Who could have believed this, and even more, if *Pliny*, one of the most serious writers, had not solemnly affirmed that he had neither heard nor read the least particle about it, but had beheld it himself with his own eyes ? Yes ! who could have believed that the earth was hollow, and that within its shell there were both sun and moon, if my own experience had not discovered this secret ? Who would have thought it possible, that there existed a globe, which was inhabited by rational and walking trees, if the same experience had not placed the matter beyond all doubt ? I will, however, not quarrel with any one for his incredulity in this respect ; for I must acknowledge, that I myself, before I made this journey, entertained a kind of suspicion that it was nothing else than stories and nursery-ales related by masters of ships.

In the beginning of the month of *Radir* we embarked, weighed anchor, and



The wind then fill'd th' extended sails,  
 Supported by the bending masts,  
 And through the deep, with pleasant gales,  
 Our vessel like an arrow hastes :  
 And while the briny flood her pitchy sides did lave,  
 She rose and bounded cheerily o'er ev'ry mountain-wave.

The breeze continued favourable for three days, during which time we poor rowers had reason to rejoice, for not an oar was required ; but on the fourth day we had a perfect calm :

The sails were furl'd, and all the oars were plied  
 To force our vessel through the sluggish tide.

As the Captain perceived that this labour was extremely painful to me, he was kind enough to allow me now and then to rest, and released me at length altogether from this servitude. I am ignorant of the reason that induced him to show me so much kindness, unless it was that he thought me innocent, or because he deemed the inventor of the majestic *periwig* worthy of a better fate. He had himself taken three of these *wigs* with him, and I was employed to frizzle and keep them in order ; so that from a galley-slave I was suddenly metamorphosed into a hair-dresser. His good-nature went so far, that whenever we arrived in a harbour, he always allowed me to be one to go

on shore, by which I had abundance of opportunities for satisfying my curiosity.

For a length of time we met with nothing that was worthy of remark ; but as soon as we had lost sight of land,

New forms rose up from out the boundless deep.

These were *mermaids*, which, when the weather was calm and the sea still, came swimming round the ship to ask charity :

They'd human mouths and noses,  
 They'd chins, and ears, and eyes,  
 They'd breasts and lips like roses  
 Before the flower dies ;  
 They'd ev'ry charming feature,  
 Which beauteous maids possess ;  
 Each seem'd a lovely creature,  
 Whom man might well caress,  
 But no ; they'd tails of fishes,  
 And cover'd with hard scales,  
 Repugnant to man's wishes,  
 And black, too, as are whales.

Their language had so much affinity with the *Martinian*, that even several of the sailors were able to converse with them without an interpreter. One of them asked me for a piece of meat ; and when I gave it to her, she looked attentively at me

and exclaimed, "A mighty hero and a ruler you'll become!"

I laughed at this prediction, as at empty flattery, notwithstanding the sailors swore that the prophecies of the mermaids were seldom erroneous. After a voyage of eight days, we at length descried a country which the ship's crew called *Picardania*. Here we put into harbour; when immediately a magpie came flying towards us, whom I learnt to be the Inspector-general of the Customs, and a very considerable personage. I had much to do to refrain from bursting my sides with laughter, on hearing that a magpie filled such an important office, and seeing a collector,

Up to the thinner air, on playful wing,  
Soar till he seem'd a spot in heav'n's blue sky.

From the size and character of the Inspector, I concluded that the Searchers and inferior Custom-house officers must be flies.

When he had flown three times round our vessel, he then flew ashore, and returned with three other Magpies. They all alighted upon the prow. I thought that I should have split with laughter, when I saw one of our interpreters approach these magpies with many compliments, and heard him hold

a long conversation with them. They were come to inspect the cargo, and to examine whether we had concealed any contraband goods, particularly the plant *Slak*, the importation of which is most strictly prohibited. They are accustomed, therefore, to search for this article with the utmost care and diligence ; and creep for this purpose into every nook and corner of the ship, rummage every package, and search every pocket, in order to scent it out. The fact is, that the inhabitants are particularly partial to this plant, and barter for it other excellent and necessary commodities, by which the country's indigenous plants, which might answer the same purpose, are depreciated in value ; so that the *Picardians*, in this respect, perfectly resemble the *Europeans*, who are so eager after everything which is produced in foreign countries, and must be fetched from a great distance and at great expense.

When the Inspector-general had conversed a pretty long time with our interpreters, he went down into the ship's hold, accompanied by the other magpies. On his coming up again, he appeared to be extremely irritated, and let us know that all trade between us and his nation should henceforth entirely cease, seeing that we had violated the treaty which was concluded, by bringing prohibited goods with

us. But the Captain, who knew by experience how the anger of a Custom-house Inspector was immediately to be appeased, presented him with a few pounds of *Slak* of the best sort, which completely altered his tone, and he gave us permission to discharge our cargo. When everything was landed, there came flying to us an immense multitude of magpies, who were all merchants. Meanwhile the Captain, with me and two other apes, namely, our supercargo and an interpreter, went on shore.

We were invited to dine with the Inspector-general. There was, however, no table; for the *Picardanians* are not able to use chairs: the cloth was, therefore, laid in the middle of the floor. An abundance of costly and sumptuous courses were served up, but on extremely small dishes: and as the kitchen was in the attic, four magpies came flying down with each course through an aperture in the ceiling. When the dinner was over, the Inspector-general showed us his library. It consisted of a tolerably large number of volumes; but of such diminutive sizes, that the largest folios were scarcely so big as a child's halfpenny story-book, I could not forbear smiling, when I saw the librarian fly up to the highest shelves, to take down small volumes in octavo and duodecimo. The houses of

the *Picardians* are not very unlike our own in construction and embellishments ; excepting that the beds hang close under the roof, similar to birds' nests. Every one will naturally wonder, how it is possible that magpies, which belong to the inferior kind of birds, are able to erect such immense buildings ; but of its really being the case, I was fully convinced, by observing them work at a house, which they at that time were in the act of building. There were on this occasion thousands of work-people in motion. The number employed, and the facility with which they fly, compensate in a great measure for their want of strength ; so that they, in almost as short a time as we, can finish any building.

We could not enjoy the pleasure of seeing the lady of the Inspector-general, as she had just lain in ; and it is not customary here for a lying-in wife to make her appearance until the children are fledged : but she would shortly venture out, her husband said ; for the young ones began already to be beautiful and downy.

Our stay in this country was so short, that I am not able to give a more accurate description of its condition, and of the character and manners of the inhabitants. Everybody's mind was in ferment

and disquiet at the same time, in consequence of a war which had lately broken out between the *Picardians* and their neighbours the *Fieldfares*; especially as, the day after our arrival, the news was brought, that the magpies were defeated in a great battle fought in the air; and the commanding General, on whom a court-martial was held, was sentenced to lose his wings, which is here looked upon as a dreadful punishment, and almost as great as the loss of life. As soon as we had disposed of our merchandize, we again set sail. Not far from the shore we perceived the sea covered with feathers, from which we were led to conclude that the battle between the magpies and fieldfares must have been fought over that place.

After a favourable passage of three days, we arrived in *Music-land*. As soon as the anchor was cast we went on shore. One of our interpreters walked before us with a musical instrument, which in Europe is called a *bass-viol*. This appeared to me exceedingly ridiculous, for I was unable to conceive for what purpose he carried this cumbersome burden. As we found all vacant and desolate, and saw not the least trace of a living creature, the Captain ordered the trumpet to be sounded, to give the inhabitants notice of our arrival; whereupon there came immediately running somewhere about thirty

musical instruments, or bass-viol, each on one leg. As upon the whole of my travels I had never met with anything so wonderful before, it seemed to me in the beginning to be nothing but witchcraft; but I soon remarked, that these *bass-viol*s were the inhabitants of the country. On the top of a pretty long neck they had a very little head; the body itself was small, and incrustated with a smooth bark, which fitted, however, not tight to the carcass, but left a tolerably wide vacant space between. Over the navel they had by nature a bridge, across which the four strings were extended. The whole machine rested on one leg; so that it may be said they rather hopped than ran, and they skipped with a wonderful agility across their verdant fields. In short, as to what regards their shape, one might certainly have taken them for real musical instruments, if they had not had two hands and arms. In the one hand they hold the bow, and the other is used for fingering with. When our interpreter wished to speak with them, he took the bass-viol, which he had with him, in the left hand, the bow in the right, placed himself in a proper attitude, and began to play. They answered immediately by strokes on their strings; and, through performing thus by turns with each other, they came at length to a regular musical dialogue. In the beginning they played merely *adagio* with much harmony; but they got immediately



upon discordant and jarring tones, which were grating and unpleasant to the ear; and at length they ended the music with a particularly lively and agreeable *presto*. As soon as our people heard this, they skipped and jumped with joy, saying, that the bargain for the merchandize was concluded. I learned afterwards, that the *adagio*, which they played in the beginning, was an introduction to the dialogue, and consisted in mere mutual compliments: afterwards, while the *dissonance* lasted, they were treating about the price: and at length the sweet-sounding *presto* signified that the sale and purchase were effected; for immediately after the vessel was discharged. Among other articles which are imported into this country, *Colophonia* is the most considerable, with which the inhabitants smear their bows or speaking-tools. Great criminals are punished by depriving them of their bows; and to lose them for ever is looked upon as equivalent to punishing with death. As I was told, that a cause was to be tried in a court of justice in the neighbourhood, I ran thither, in order once to witness a musical law-suit. The pleading barristers played upon their ventrical strings, instead of speaking, and as long as the cause continued nothing was heard but dissonance; so that their eloquence consisted in strokes with the bow, and actions with the hands. As soon as the wrangling

was finished, the judge rose from his seat, took his bow, and played an *adagio*. I remarked, that it was the sentence he pronounced; for there sprang forward immediately several officers of justice, and took away the bow from the malefactor who had lost the cause.

The children in this country have the appearance of those instruments which we call *fiddles*. They obtain no bow until they are three years old. On entering their fourth year, they are sent to school, to be instructed in fingering the strings, and drawing the bow, which is here the same as teaching to read with us. They are not taken from school before they have learned to finger correctly, draw the bow without jarring, and are even able to compose a melody. We were excessively tormented by these children, who followed us everywhere with their music. Our interpreter, who understood the instrument language, told us, that these young bass-viols were begging for colophonia. All the time they begged, nothing was heard but a *grave tone* or an *adagio*; but when they got anything they played *presto*, by which they meant to express their gratitude. If they got nothing, their music ceased altogether.

As we had now arranged all our affairs according

to our wishes, we quitted Music-land at the end of the month of *Cusan*; and after three days' sailing we descried the coast of a new country, which, in consequence of the impure air that saluted our olfactory nerves, we concluded must be *Pyglossia*. The inhabitants of this country very much resemble human beings; the whole difference consists in their having no mouth, and therefore speak with that part which is turned to the South when the nose points towards the North Pole. The first person that came on board was a rich merchant. He saluted us, according to the custom of these people, with the other end, and began to speak about the price of our goods. While this lasted I kept myself at a respectful distance, as I had no particular relish either for the sound or the smell of his discourse. But to my great misfortune and annoyance, our barber was sick at the same time, so that I was under the necessity of being shaved by a *Pyglossian*; and as the barbers here are just as talkative as those in Europe, he filled the whole cabin, while he scraped me, with so unpleasant an odour, that as soon as he was gone, we were obliged to fumigate with all the incense which we had on board.

I was now become accustomed to things which were both wonderful and supernatural, so that nothing appeared to me any longer either extrava-

gant or preposterous. As, however, in consequence of this defect in nature, it was difficult as well as tedious to converse with these people, we endeavoured by all the means in our power to accelerate our departure, and even weighed anchor somewhat before the appointed time ; principally because a rich *Pyglossian* had invited us to dinner. On the invitation being given, we all shrugged our shoulders, and no one seemed willing to accept it, excepting on the condition, that so long as the dinner lasted, there should be maintained at the table a perfect silence. When we sailed out of the harbour, there stood on the shore a multitude of *Pyglossians*, who in a strangely noisy manner wished us a good voyage ; but as the wind blew from the land, we begged of them with looks and gestures to spare their congratulations ; for politeness even may be carried too far. The articles which the *Martinians* export to this place, are rose-water, balsam, and a variety of fragrant spices.

I have already remarked, that this people, in respect to the form of their bodies, resembled much the human being, except in so far that they spoke with that part whereon we always sit. On our earth, there is no lack of people, who, as well in dialect as in shape, perfectly resemble the *Pyglossians*. Thought I to myself, should *Jens*

*Soerensen, Ole Petersen, Andreas Lorensten*, and other such like polite characters, who, with cynical bluntness, give everything its proper name; and without shame or reserve, even in the company of females, manifest their corrupt and frivolous minds. I say, should these talkers of ribaldry and obscenity come to this country, they would be received with open arms. On account of the affinity of their language they would immediately obtain their burgher-right, and be looked upon as natives. For what matters it where the mouth is placed, when that which comes out of it

Is a sounding stink, and a stinking sound,  
Which a dunghill discovers in mind and body ?

From this place we steered our course for *Iceland*, which was so dreary and so horrible to look at, that I thought it must be the most unhappy of all countries. It consisted of barren rocks, which were eternally covered with snow. The inhabitants, who are all of ice, dwell here and there, in clefts on the tops of the mountains, into which the rays of the sun never penetrate, and where, in black darkness, there reigns an incessant frost. The only light they ever have, is reflected from the glistening rime. The valleys are dried up and parched with smoke ; they therefore never venture

down into them, except in thick and damp weather, when the atmosphere is very foggy; and as soon as they perceive the smallest ray of the sun, they either suddenly return, or plunge themselves headlong into pits or caverns. It frequently happens, that on descending from the mountains, they melt on the way, or meet with some other misfortune. Criminals, for this reason, are conducted down in thick weather upon a sledge, and there bound to a stake until they are melted by the rays of the sun. This country produces every kind of mineral, excepting gold. These minerals are exported by foreign merchants in their crude state, as the inhabitants cannot bear heat, and are, therefore, unable to smelt the ore, and manufacture the metals. It is supposed that the commerce of *Ice-land* brings in nearly as much again as all the other trade of *Mezendores*.

All these countries, whereof I have given a short description, are subject to the Emperor of *Mezendores*. The seafaring people call them generally, on that account, the Mezendorian Islands, notwithstanding each of them has a particular name—as may be seen in this book of my travels. After a voyage of eight days, we arrived at the city where the Emperor resides, and there found in reality everything that the poets have written concerning

the fellowship of animals, trees, and plants ; for *Mezendores* is, as it were, the common father-land of all rational animals and vegetables. Every animal, every tree, can there obtain its burghership, provided it submit to the government and the laws. One might be led to think that, in consequence of the mixing of such a multiplicity of differently-formed and heterogeneous beings, there must reign much confusion, broils, and disquiet. But so far is this from being the case, that, on the contrary, this variety produces the most happy effects ; which may be attributed to their wise laws and regulations, by virtue of which all the subjects are appointed to such employments and occupations as, by nature and the peculiar faculties of the mind, they are best qualified to perform. Thus, for example, in consideration of the innate magnanimity which is peculiar to lions, a *lion* is always elected Regent. *Elephants*, in consequence of their acute judgment, are chosen members of the Council of State. *Cameleons* are selected as courtiers, because they are changeable, and know how to turn their coat according to the weather. The military consists of *bears*, *tigers*, and other valiant and martial animals. The fleet, on the contrary, is manned with *oxen* and *bulls* ; as seamen, generally speaking, are a plain and brave set of people ; but hard, severe, inflexible, and, for the most part,

not of particularly refined manners, and whose way of life is accordant with their element. For this reason, there is a school established, consisting of *calves*, or midshipmen, wherein these warriors are moulded, and from which all the naval officers are taken. The *trees*, because of their natural moderation and discretion, are commonly chosen as judges. The counsellors of the higher courts of justice are *geese*; and those of the lower courts, *magpies*. *Foxes* are selected as ordinary and extraordinary ambassadors, consuls, agents, and secretaries of legation. *Ravens* are generally appointed as dividers of inheritances, and commissioners for the effects of deceased persons. *He-goats* are philosophers, and particularly grammarians—partly on account of their horns, with which on the slightest occasion they are accustomed to gore their opponents, and partly in consideration of their venerable beards, which so manifestly distinguish them from all other beings. The burgo-masters and aldermen of small market-towns are *horses*. Land and house-owners and farmers are *snakes*, *moles*, *rats*, and *mice*. For estafettes and couriers, *birds* are employed. *Asses*, on account of their frightful braying, are selected as parish-clerks. *Nightingales* are singers and flute-players, *cocks* are watchmen, and *dogs* are door-keepers. *Wolves* are commonly chosen as financiers, chan-



cellors of the exchequer, and inspectors of the Customs, and *hawks* are their deputies.

By these excellent regulations, the public offices were correctly entrusted, and everything was performed pleasantly and in due order. For this reason, I consider that the government of *Mezendores* is a pattern by which all legislators, in the management of state affairs, ought to regulate themselves; for it is certainly not so much the stupidity of the subjects, that there are in other countries so many useless and unqualified placemen, but the fault arises from a want of judgment in those who appoint them. If care and prudence were always exercised in choosing persons to fill public situations, and they were selected, not so much for their merits in general as for their distinguished abilities and qualifications to hold this or that office in particular, then would all national business be well performed, and the State would incessantly flourish. How far such a regulation is beneficial, the following example will prove:—The Mezendorian annals mention, that about three hundred years ago, during the reign of the emperor *Lilako*, this law was repealed, and the public situations were given away at random, to all who had either done anything worthy of notice, or distinguished themselves by any particular virtue. But this distribution

of offices at random occasioned so much disturbance and confusion, that in a short time it seemed as if the existence of the State was at an end. A wolf, for example, who had so admirably discharged the duties of the office of chancellor, requested, on the ground of this service, to be promoted to a higher dignity, and became in consequence a senator. A tree, on the contrary, who was known for his distinguished and acute judgment, became again a chancellor. By this inverted promotion two skilful and clever persons were rendered entirely useless to the State. And further, a he-goat, or philosopher, who, at the academy, had acquired the highest renown for his obstinacy in defending his positions, was so inflated with this honour, that he endeavoured for a higher post—namely, the first place at court which might become vacant, and he obtained it. On the other side, a cameleon, on the grounds of his good breeding and supple character, obtained a professorship at the academy, which he solicited on account of the stipend attached to it. Thus was the one transformed from an excellent courtier to a miserable philosopher, and the other from an excellent philosopher to a miserable courtier. For the firmness which he had exhibited in maintaining his opinions, and which had so much adorned the philosopher, now completely disfigured the courtier, as volatility, fickleness, and versatility,

are cardinal virtues at courts, and a true courtier ought not to look so much at what is just, proper, and equitable, as at that which is secure ; and must continually turn his coat according to the weather of the court. But that which is an imperfection or a fault at court, is just a virtue at the academy, where ardour and vehemence in maintaining one's opinion to the utmost, are looked upon as the greatest proof of learning and sedulity. In a word : through the repealing of this law, all the subjects of the empire, even those who were distinguished for the most rare talents and shining abilities, were rendered completely useless, and the State began to totter. As everything was threatened with ruin and destruction, a particularly clever and intelligent elephant, of the name of *Bakkari*, who was Counsellor of State, stood forward, and with much warmth represented to the Emperor the miserable state of the country. His Majesty was convinced, resolved immediately to remove the evil, and went to work in the following manner : he did not at once discharge all the placemen,—for in that case the remedy would have been worse than the disease,—but, by degrees, as the offices became vacant, he transferred every one from the post where he was useless, to one where he could exercise his abilities to advantage. For the services which *Bakkari*, on this occasion, rendered to his father-land, the beneficial

effects of which were soon manifest, a public monument, after his death, was erected to his memory, and which may still be seen in the centre of the great square at *Mezendores*. From that time forward the ancient laws have been constantly held sacred.

Our interpreter assured us that this history was related to him by a gander, who was his most intimate friend, and was considered one of the most clever and skilful counsellors in the whole city.

In this country is found such a multiplicity of extraordinary and highly wonderful things, that the attention of the foreigner and traveller must thereby necessarily be attracted. The mere appearance of such a diversity of living creatures, as *bears, wolves, geese, magpies, &c.*, which walk through the streets and converse with each other, excite in every one, who has never beheld the like before, both pleasure and admiration. The first who came on board of our vessel, was a lean and hungry *wolf*, or inspector of the customs, who was followed by four *hawks*, or custom-house officers, whom we in Europe denominate *searchers*. These persons took of such articles as they liked the best, and gave us thereby to understand, that they were not deficient in knowledge of their trade, and that

they had every trick at the ends of their fingers. The Captain, with his accustomed politeness, took me with him on shore. As soon as we had set foot upon the bridge, we were met by a *cock*, who asked us whence we came, and the object of our visit, and then announced us to the Inspector of the Customs. He received us with much courteousness, and invited us to dine with him. The lady of the house, his wife, who, as I heard, was one of the greatest beauties among the female wolves, was not present at table. The reason of this, as we afterwards learned, was the jealousy of her husband, who thought it not altogether advisable to allow so handsome a wife to be seen by foreigners, and especially by sailors, who, greedy and languishing in consequence of so long a fast, commonly, as soon as they get on shore, run after every woman and girl they see. There were, however, several other ladies at table, among whom was the wife of a certain Commandant: this lady was a white *cow*, with a few black spots. Next to her sat a black *cat*, who was the wife of the Head Forester to the Emperor, and was lately from the country. By the side of me sat a speckled *sow*, the wife of a certain Collector of Taxes; for this class of placemen is generally chosen out of the swinish multitude. She was certainly a little filthy, and had neglected to wash her hands—a case very common among that

sort of people ; but for the rest, she appeared to me exceedingly beautiful and very complaisant ; for she frequently took meat from the dish and laid it on my plate. Every one was surprised at this extraordinary politeness, especially as swine do not always possess exactly the most elegant and polished manners. But I had much rather that she had not been quite so polite ; for it was not particularly agreeable to me to be assisted to victuals by the dirty hands of a sow. It must here be remarked, that the inhabitants of the empire of *Mezendores*, although in the form of their bodies completely resemble the brute creation, they nevertheless have hands and fingers on their fore-legs. As they are covered either with hair, wool, or feathers, they require no other kind of clothing. The rich, however, are distinguished from the poor by certain ornaments ; as, for example, chains of gold or pearls, which they wear round the neck ; and ribbon, which they, in a fantastical manner, wind round their horns. The wife of the Commandant had so many frills and knots of ribbon about her head, that it was with difficulty her horns could be seen at all. She made an excuse for the absence of her husband, who, she said, was obliged to stay at home, in consequence of a dispute in which he had lately involved himself, and was, therefore, necessitated to consult with two *magpies*, who, the following day,

were to bring his cause forward before the tribunal.

After dinner, the speckled sow—the wife of the Tax-gatherer—had a private conversation with our interpreter, wherein she declared to him that she was deeply in love with me. He consoled her in the best way he could, promised her his assistance, and then turned round and endeavoured to prevail upon me to yield to her desires ; but when he found that all his persuasive eloquence was of no avail, he advised me to flee without loss of time ; for he well knew that this lady would move both heaven and earth to compass her design. From that day forward I remained continually on board, particularly as it came to my knowledge that an old gallant of the lady, a certain *studiosus philosophiæ*, in consequence of jealousy, laid in wait to murder me. But the vessel herself was not a sufficient fence against this female's attack, who, first with verbal messages, then with billets-doux, and afterwards with elegies on love, strove to melt the ice which surrounded my heart. Had I not lost these papers in the shipwreck which I afterwards suffered, I should here have shown several specimens of swinish poesy. But I have nearly forgotten the whole of it, with the exception of these few lines, wherein she exalts her form in the following style :—

O thou ! for whom my soul doth always long,  
 Think me not ugly, neither think me wrong  
 In thus unbosoming my painful feelings,  
 While doom'd to breakfast on potato-peelings.  
 View me, my love, ah ! prithee do not fail,  
 View me in front, then view me near the tail ;  
 View both my sides, and eke my teats and chine,  
 And say, if e'er you saw a form like mine.  
 Perhaps you are in love, my dear, my life,  
 With Madam Cow, the toll-inspector's wife ;  
 Or else, perhaps—ah, palpitating heart !  
 Whilst now I write, thou feel'st the poignant smart  
 Of disappointment throbbing in thy core.—  
 Thou know'st thyself how much thou dost adore !—  
 I say, perhaps—and when I've said all that,  
 You are in love with that malicious cat.  
 But leave the cat, the cow, and ev'ry tree,  
 And be in love, my young wild-boar, with me !

The sale and barter of the merchandise went on with so much celerity, that in a few days we could have put to sea again ; but a quarrel which took place, just when we were ready for sailing, between our crew and some of the Mezendorians, delayed our departure for some time. The occasion of the quarrel was as follows:—while one of our boat-swains was walking through the city, he was shamefully abused by a *cuckoo*, who, among other opprobrious epithets, called him a *peripom*, which word in their language signifies a juggler ; for as jugglers



and puppet-show-players in this country are commonly *apes*, the cuckoo took him, no doubt, for such a person. The boatswain, who by no means relished the joke, gave the poor cuckoo a sound drubbing, and was very near breaking his neck. The cuckoo, who was severely beaten, requested the people to bear in remembrance what had passed, summoned all the by-standers as witnesses, and the matter came the following day before a magistrate for investigation. When the depositions of all the witnesses had been taken, the affair was immediately sent to a tribunal for decision. The boatswain, who neither understood the language nor the jurisprudence of *Mezendores*, was obliged to engage a magpie to defend his cause. When the counsellors for both parties had spoken, replied, rejoined, and wrangled and twisted the matter this way and that way, before the tribunal, for the space of nearly half a day, the following judgment was at length pronounced:—*That as the cuckoo had begun the quarrel, he should be fined, and pay the expenses of the process*; of which, as usual, the greatest part went into the pockets of the lawyers. The magistrates who judged this cause were *horses*, whereof two were denominated burgo-masters, and four, aldermen. There were present also six *colts*, as hearers, who in this manner, as young barristers, were instructed in matters of

legal procedure. In the other colleges, I was told that there were just such like seminaries, whence those students, who had made the greatest proficiency in the study of jurisprudence, were taken to fill up the vacant places.

As we had now fortunately terminated our business, and taken on board a very valuable cargo, we set sail on our return home. We had scarcely got into the open sea, when it suddenly became calm, and the crew, in order to pass away the time, went to fishing, some with nets and others with hooks. Shortly after, a smart breeze sprang up, and

The swelling sails again were quickly spread.

When we had been sailing for a considerable time with a favourable gale, we once more perceived several mermaids,

Who oft did raise themselves, then dive again,  
Amid the foaming billows,—

and ever and anon uttered a frightful shriek. At this the sailors became much terrified, as they knew, from experience, that this doleful music usually portended a storm and shipwreck. The mainsail was, therefore, immediately taken in, and every one

had his post and occupation assigned to him. This was hardly done, when the heavens began most dismally to lower,

And day was chang'd to frowning night,  
 And much convuls'd appear'd the sky ;  
 Each seaman stood aghast with fright,  
 Believing that his end was nigh.  
 While o'er the mountain-billows dash'd  
 Our lab'ring bark, quite uncontroll'd,  
 The lightning ev'ry instant flash'd,  
 The thunder roar'd, the tempest howl'd;  
 And while we thus upon the deep were toss'd;  
 All wrung their hands and cried, We're lost ! we're lost !

The mate of the vessel, who had ploughed the subterraneous ocean for forty years, assured us that he had never experienced so violent a tempest. Everything was washed off the deck, partly by the seas which the vessel shipped, and partly by the excessive rain, which, from a tremendous water-spout, accompanied with thunder and lightning, poured down upon us—so that the elements seemed to have conspired together for our destruction. While we were thus drifting about on the boisterous deep, snap at once went our mainmast, and fell with a dreadful crash over the stern, carrying away our mizenmast at the same time. Immediately after, the foremast fell, and now all hope to save our-

selves completely vanished. We saw nothing but certain death before our eyes ; the one called upon wife and children, the other upon friends and relations, and the whole ship resounded with cries of despair. The mate, although he had given up all hope, nevertheless strove to calm the perturbation of the crew, and bade them cease their howling and lamentations, which he said were entirely useless ; but while he was speaking, the vessel shipped a heavy sea, and he was carried overboard and drowned. We saw him rise two or three times, but each time farther from the ship, till at length he was swallowed up in the raging billows, and we lost sight of him for ever. Three others shared a like fate, namely our merchant, or supercargo, and two sailors. I was the only one who bore this general calamity with patience, as I was completely weary of my life, and felt not the least desire to return to *Martinia*, where I had lost both my liberty and all esteem. Thus was I one of the number of those,

Who ev'rything had lost, and had no fear more.

I was extremely concerned for the Captain, who, during the whole voyage, had shown me so much kindness ; I therefore endeavoured, with the most expressive and energetic language of which I was

master, to exhilarate his dejected spirits, but all my eloquence was of no avail ; for he continued, like a great girl, to sigh and howl, until a wave came and washed him overboard. The storm increased, and no one troubled himself any further about the ship. Without rudder, masts, oars, or ropes, the hull of the vessel was driven completely at the mercy of the waves. For three whole days we were in this manner a ball before the raging tempest, exhausted with hunger, and in constant expectation of approaching death. The clouds, now and then, cleared away, and we beheld the blue sky ; but the storm raged nevertheless with unabated fury. To the consolation of the remaining crew, we at length discovered at some distance a mountainous country, and the wind setting directly upon it, we were in hopes of reaching it in a short time. Although it seemed impossible for us to land, without suffering shipwreck, as the coast consisted of steep and craggy rocks, yet it was hoped that some, if not all, might be able to save themselves upon part of the hull. While we were thus buoying ourselves up with these vain hopes, the vessel struck so heavily upon a sunken rock, that she immediately separated and went into a hundred pieces. In this agony and distress, I seized hold of a plank, and without concerning myself about the others, I only thought of how I might escape a watery grave ; so that even to this

moment I am ignorant of what became of them. But it is most probable that they all perished, for I never heard that any of them got on shore. I was driven forward by the waves with great rapidity, which was my good fortune; for had I continued much longer in that condition, I should certainly have given up the ghost from hunger and fatigue. When I had got round a cape, which projected out a good distance, I found that the waves were not so high, and the roaring of the sea I heard less and less distinctly. On seeing that I approached the shore, I began to bawl as loudly as I could, in hopes that the inhabitants, on hearing the noise, would come to my succour. To my first cry I received no answer; but when I cried a second time, I heard a sound from the shore, and perceived a number of the natives running out of woods, while others were coming to meet me in a yawl, which was wreathed together with withies and oak-twigs; from which I concluded, that this nation must be extremely savage and uncultivated. But I was heartily glad, when the rowers approached me, to see that they were perfectly of the human form, and the only real men whom I had met with in all my travels. They resembled very much the people on our globe, who dwell in hot climates; for their beards were coal black, and their hair was curly: and those individuals who have long and loose hair

are looked upon as deformed. The country which they inhabit is full of barren rocks, and the craggy ridges of mountains contiguous to each other, which, in numerous bays and gulfs, pierce the clouds, cause the echo to reverberate through the valleys, producing the most astonishing effect. They at length reached the plank on which I was drifting, took me into their yawl, and set me on shore, wet as I was, where they immediately supplied me hospitably with both meat and drink. Although the food which they gave me was not particularly savoury and delicious, it nevertheless refreshed me so much, after having hungered and thirsted for three days, that in a short time I recovered my former strength.

## CHAPTER XII.

---

 THE AUTHOR'S ARRIVAL AT QUAMA.
 

---

IN the mean time a multitude of people crowded round me from all sides. One of them, in the name of the whole, invited me to speak ; but as I was unacquainted with their language, I knew not what to answer. They frequently repeated the words *dank, dank* ; and as these seemed to me to be German, I answered them first in that language, afterwards in Danish, and, lastly, in Latin ; but they gave me to understand, by a shake of the head, that these tongues were unknown to them. I endeavoured, at length, to explain myself in the subterraneous languages ; namely, in the *Nazarean* and *Martinian*, but all to no purpose. From this circumstance I concluded that this nation could not have the least intercourse with foreigners, either by means of commerce, or any other connexions, and



that I should in this place be obliged to become a child again, and go to school afresh.

After we had conversed together for some time, without understanding each other, I was conducted into a small wattled cottage. In this there was neither table, chair, nor bench; they sat upon the ground to take their victuals, and, instead of beds, they spread straw upon the floor, and there lay higgledy-piggledy, and slept the whole night. I was so much the more surprised at this, as the country contains a superfluity of thick woods. Their only subsistence was milk, cheese, barley-bread, and meat, which they always broiled, as they were entirely ignorant of boiling: in short, they lived nearly after the same manner as our primitive parents,

Who wore the skins of animals they'd kill'd,  
 Ate game and roots, of limpid water drank,  
 In arts and sciences they were not skill'd,  
 No laws, no wealth, no difference of rank,  
 No pomp, nor yet profuseness, they e'er knew;  
 These things by them were little understood;  
 Their hearts were gen'rous, and their errors few,  
 Their manners simple, their intentions good.

I was obliged to live for a length of time like a dog, until I was master of so much of their

language, as to enable me to converse with, and assist them a little through their ignorance. The least of all rules that I gave them, by which to lead an honest life, they looked upon as divine precepts. My fame was quickly spread abroad, and all the people from the adjacent villages flocked to me in crowds, as if I had been a teacher sent down from heaven. I heard, even, that many had begun a new chronology from the time of my arrival. All this tickled me so much the more, as I had formerly, upon the planet *Nazar*, been derided, mocked, and ridiculed, for my inconsiderateness and volatile powers of comprehension; and in *Martinia* for my stupidity. This proves the truth of the old adage, that among the blind, a one-eyed man's a king; for I had now got into a country where I, with a very little common learning, could easily raise myself to the highest dignity. I had here the best opportunity in the world to employ my talents, since this very fruitful country produces everything in abundance that man requires, either for pleasure or advantage. The inhabitants were by no means indocile, and were not deficient in conception; but as they had never been instructed in anything, they lived in the darkest ignorance. When I related to them concerning my birth, father-land, the shipwreck I had suffered, and several other adventures, occurrences, and incidents upon my travels,

no one would believe me. They were much more inclined to believe that I was an inhabitant of the sun, and had descended from that great luminary, for which reason they commonly called me *Pikil-su*, or *Envoy from the Sun*. With respect to their religion, they did not deny the existence of a Supreme Being, but gave themselves very little trouble about proving it: they thought it enough for them to believe the same as their forefathers had believed; and in this sole doctrine consisted the whole of their theology. In morals they only knew this one simple precept—*Do not unto others, what you would not that they should do unto you*. They had no laws; the Emperor's will was their only rule. They punished here only for public offences; but when a person committed otherwise any knavery, everybody shunned him and avoided his conversation, and all intercourse with him; and this contempt was generally so insupportable to the guilty, that they most commonly grieved themselves to death, or, growing weary of their lives, put a period to their existence. Of the computation of time they were perfectly ignorant: they reckoned their year after the eclipses of the sun, occasioned by the intervention of the planet *Nazar*. When a person was asked how old he was, he usually answered, that he had lived to witness so many eclipses. Their knowledge of nature was extremely small and

pervverted ; for they believed the *sun* to be a plate of gold, and the planet *Nazar* to be a cheese. When I asked them the cause why this planet, at certain times, increased and waned, they answered, that they knew not. Their wealth consisted in swine, which, with marks upon them, ran about the woods ; and every one considered himself rich, according to the number of pigs he possessed. Those trees which did not bear acorns or mast, and which had the appearance of not thriving, they used to lash well with a whip, as they, in their simplicity, attributed this unfruitfulness to perverseness and malevolence.

In this manner was the condition of this miserable people disposed, whom I in the beginning, even with the assistance of art and instruction, despaired of being able to make intelligent beings of ; but when I recollected,

That diligence is always well rewarded,  
My scheme should, therefore, not be now retarded,

I bestowed immediately, for this reason, all possible pains to refine and enlighten this raw and uncultivated people, which occasioned me to be looked upon by them as a Deity : and their confidence in my wisdom went so far, that they thought

nothing impossible for me to perform. Therefore,

If here an ox was stolen, there a cow was ill,  
 If pigs died in the wood, or fox the geese did kill;  
 If e'er their fields of corn were beaten down by hail,  
 To me they ran straightway, and told the woful tale.

So that in the middle of the night they would frequently visit my cottage and implore my assistance. I recollect to have once found a peasant on his knees on the outside of my door, wringing his hands, weeping, and complaining bitterly of the unfruitfulness of his trees; and supplicating me at the same time, in the most grievous manner, to exercise my authority, and cause them again to bear acorns, as they formerly did.

I learned, that the whole realm was under the dominions of a Regent, whose residence was, at that time, eight days' journey from the village where I lived. I use the expression "at that time," because the imperial residence was in no fixed place; and, instead of solid houses, consisted of tents, wherein the court and all the household dwelt, and removed at pleasure from one province to another. The reigning Prince was a very old man, and bore the title of *Casba*, which signifies *the great Emperor*. In consideration of the

number of provinces which this State contains, it may with propriety be denominated an Empire ; but on account of the ignorance of the inhabitants, who knew not how to profit by their manifold advantages, it had always been looked upon as insignificant, exposed to the attacks, mockery, and derision of its neighbours, and not unfrequently obliged to pay tribute even to the most rude and uncivilized nations.

The fame of my name and perfection was in a short time spread through every province. From that time forward, no one undertook anything without first consulting me, as an oracle ; and when any undertaking proved abortive, the cause was ascribed to my indifference and displeasure, for which reason numerous sacrifices and offerings were made, whereby again to appease my wrath. I shall forbear to mention all the absurdities of which this extremely stupid people was guilty ; and confine myself to relating two or three, from which a person may easily imagine the nature of the rest. A pregnant woman once believed that, with a very little trouble, I could cause the foetus then in embryo to be a boy ; another besought me to make her old parents young again ; a third person, who was a man, entreated me to convey him up to the sun, whence he might take as much gold as he

needed, and bring an immense treasure back with him. With these, and numerous other similarly preposterous requests, I was so importuned, that many times I was obliged seriously and earnestly to set them to rights for their foolishness ; for I really feared, that the too great confidence which they placed in my power and perfection, would at length terminate in divine worship. After some time, it reached the ears of the old Emperor, that a great man was arrived in the country, in a strange, outlandish dress, who gave himself out as the Envoy from the sun, and had, by laying down to divers *Quamites* (as the inhabitants are called, after the name of the country *Quama*), the most wise, and almost divine rules for guiding them correctly in the way through life, proved himself to be more than human. His Majesty, therefore, immediately dispatched envoys, with orders to invite me to his imperial residence. They were thirty in number, and all clad in tiger-skins, which dress is considered, in these countries, the greatest ornament ; for no one is permitted to wear it unless he has distinguished himself in the war against the *Tanaquians*, who are rational tigers, and mortal enemies of the *Quamites*.

In the village where I resided, I built a walled house two stories high, after the European fashion.

This building astonished the envoys, as a work which surpassed all human power, and they entered it, as a sanctuary, with the most religious and reverential awe, in order to announce to me the invitation of the Emperor in the following words:—

“As the great Emperor, our most gracious sovereign Lord, reckons his genealogy through numerous generations from *Spynko*, Child of the Sun, and first Regent in *Quama*, nothing in the world could have yielded him so much pleasure as this embassy, especially as it will tend so infinitely to the benefit of the State; and it is to be expected, that the whole nation, under so excellent and heavenly a teacher, will quickly assume a quite different character. His Majesty, therefore, hopes, that the Envoy from the sun will be pleased to condescend to repair to the capital at his earliest convenience, as he will there find innumerable opportunities of bringing the full powers of his perfection into immediate action.” I expressed my thankfulness in the most humble and respectful manner, and set off without delay for the capital, accompanied by the envoys. These gentlemen had been fourteen days on their journey to my house; but on our retrogression, with the help of an art of which I was master, we found four days quite sufficient. As I had remarked that in this country there was a superfluity of horses, which were more trouble-



some than serviceable to the inhabitants, since they ran about wild in the woods, I showed the great advantage that could be derived from these noble animals, and taught them how they were to be managed. Several were immediately caught and tamed, so that during the stay of the envoys at my house, I got as many broken <sup>in</sup> and in readiness, as we needed on our journey. They were much terrified at the sight of these horses, and hesitated for a long time before they would mount ; but on seeing me and many others, without fear or risk, exercise and govern them with the reins in whatsoever way we pleased, they took courage, made a trial, and accommodated themselves at length to this mode of travelling, by which they arrived again at home in less than one third of the time they had required to make the journey from the Emperor's residence. As we approached the place where we expected to find the capital, we learned that it was removed to another province ; we were, therefore, obliged to wheel about and take another route.

A person can form no idea to himself of the wonder and astonishment that were visible in the countenances of the *Quamites*, on seeing us make our entry into the capital. Some were so terrified, that they ran out of the city. The Emperor him-

self was so overcome with fear, that he durst not venture out of his tent, nor would he even make his appearance until one of the envoys dismounted, went into his apartments, and explained to him the whole mystery. In a short time after, I was introduced, followed by a numerous retinue, in the most pompous and splendèd manner, into the imperial tent. The Emperor was seated upon a carpet, surrounded by all his courtiers. On my entering the audience-chamber, I extolled, in the most modest language that I was capable of expressing, the great benignity which his Imperial Majesty had shown me: whereupon he rose from his seat, and asked me, what were the pleasure and present wishes or intentions of the King of the Sun, the first progenitor of his family? As I found it necessary to keep up the old error among the *Quamites*, I answered him, that his Majesty, the King of the Sun, had sent me down to this country, in order, by the means of good laws and rules, to refine the manners, and improve the way of life of the uncultivated *Quamites*, and teach them the arts, by which they would not only be able to resist their warlike neighbours, but also to extend the frontiers of their empire: and added, that I was commanded to remain here for a continuance. The Emperor found much pleasure and satisfaction in this discourse,

caused immediately a tent to be pitched for me close to his own, gave me fifteen servants to attend upon me, and treated me, not like a subject or dependant, with a sovereign's authority, but as an intimate and bosom-friend.

## CHAPTER XIII.

---

### BEGINNING OF THE FIFTH MONARCHY.

---

THENCEFORTH all my endeavours were used, to introduce into this nation something like order ; and I commenced by improving their military service, in exercising the young recruits in riding, fencing, the broad-sword exercise, and shooting.

Upon a heath, before the city-gates,  
On foot, on horse, and eke in battle-cars,  
In archery ; also to throw the spear,  
The young men of the town were exercis'd.

In the beginning, I taught them chiefly how to break and manage horses ; as I expected, merely with the cavalry, to be able to keep the neighbours in check. By means of uninterrupted attention and diligence, I brought things so far, that, in a short time, I displayed before the Emperor six thousand

cavalry. As the *Tanaquians* were just then preparing to make a fresh attack, in consequence of the annual tribute being withheld, the payment of which, after several demands having been made, was at length entirely refused, I advanced, according to the Emperor's request, with my new cavalry, and a party of infantry, to meet the enemy. I furnished the infantry with javelins and bows and arrows, with which they could contend against the *Tanaquians* at some considerable distance; for the *Quamites* had heretofore only made use of short swords or daggers, and were, consequently, always worsted in a grappling engagement with these dreadful enemies, who, in physical strength, were so much superior to them. I was appointed general commandant, and on learning that the *Tanaquians* were approaching the frontiers, I advanced immediately against them. At the sight of this unexpected army, they were struck with amazement, and halted for some time to contemplate us; on which I ordered our troops to advance until we were near enough to reach them with the javelins, when we immediately commenced the attack, and on the first onset killed a prodigious number. Their courage, however, was by no means daunted, and they in turn rushed with frantic impetuosity upon our infantry; but the cavalry at that instant fell upon their flanks, broke their lines, and compelled them to seek their safety

in an immediate flight; so that this attack decided the fate of the battle completely in our favour. The enemy's loss in killed and wounded, on this occasion, was enormous: the Tanaquitish general, together with twenty other noble tigers, were taken prisoners, and conducted in triumph to *Quama*.

The universal joy which this splendid victory excited throughout the whole empire, is not to be described; for the Quamites, in former wars, were commonly necessitated to lay down their arms, and supplicate for peace on the most disgraceful terms. The Emperor gave orders that the prisoners, according to an ancient custom, should immediately be put to death; but this I found to be too horrid, and therefore advised their being cast into prison; considering that the Tanaquians, with whom we were at that time neither at peace nor war, would certainly remain entirely inactive until they saw in what manner we should use their prisoners; besides I hinted, that I had need of this cessation of hostilities, in order to execute some other plans which I had then in my head.

I had remarked, that the country abounded in saltpetre, of which I had already collected a considerable quantity, for the purpose of making gunpowder. This intention I kept, however, a secret

from everybody excepting the Emperor, whose permission I required to erect workshops for the manufacture of muskets and other fire-arms. With these weapons I hoped, within a short time, to subdue all the enemies of the empire. When I had finished a few hundreds of muskets, together with the necessary bullets, I made a public trial of my invention, to the great astonishment of all who witnessed it. A certain number of soldiers were immediately selected for this kind of warfare, and exercised in the management of fire-arms. When they had attained to a considerable degree of perfection, they were reviewed by the Emperor, on which occasion I was appointed to the rank of *Jackal*, or generalissimo of all the forces. While this was going forward, I had contracted an intimate friendship with the brave leader of the Tanaquians, the prisoner *Tomopoloko*, with whom I held frequent conversations, in order to discover the condition, character, and manners of his nation. I learned, to my utter astonishment, that they were a wise, prudent, intelligent, orderly, well-bred, and enlightened people; and that they cultivated the arts and sciences with much earnestness. He told me that, in the East, there was a particularly warlike nation, against whom the Tanaquians were obliged always to hold themselves in a posture of defence. True it was, that the inhabitants were but small,

and in physical strength much weaker than those in *Tanaqui*; yet they possessed a superior acuteness, and were well exercised in archery, and had frequently compelled the Tanaquians to sue for peace. I learned shortly after, that this nation consisted of *cats*, and had distinguished itself, among all the people of the firmament, for its wise and subtle polity and extraordinary judgment. It vexed me not a little to think, that skill, knowledge, and fine manners, were found in all *animals* in the subterraneous world, and that the *human beings*, namely, the *Quamites*, were the only uncultivated barbarians. But I made myself easy in the hope that, ere long, this disgrace would be blotted out, and that the *Quamites* would quickly regain that dominion, which became them, as men, to maintain over the brute creation.

After the last defeat, the Tanaquians remained peaceable for a length of time; but as they, by means of spies, had ascertained the state and disposition of our new cavalry, and were aware that these centaurs, which had struck such a terror into them, were in reality nothing else than tamed horses, with men upon their backs, they again took courage, and equipped fresh troops to march against the *Quamites*, led on by their own King in person. Their army consisted of twenty thousand tigers, all



old soldiers who were in the last engagement, with the exception of two regiments, which had been lately raised. But these warriors, who were scraped together in such haste, were more in name than of service. Already sure of victory, they at once made an incursion into Quama. I ordered twelve thousand infantry, among whom were six hundred musqueteers, together with four thousand cavalry, to advance immediately against them. As I entertained not the least doubt respecting a fortunate result, I entreated the Emperor, in order that he might reap all the honour of the victory, to lead our soldiers. By this appearance of modesty, I lost by no means any of my own dignity or reputation, for the army still looked upon me as the real commander. I advised that the enemy should not be immediately attacked with the fire-arms, in order to see whether it was not possible to gain the victory merely with the help of the cavalry; but this advice cost me dearly; for the Tanaquians made so impetuous an assault upon our infantry, that they put them directly to flight. And on the other side, they resisted the attacks of our cavalry with so much bravery, that the victory remained for a length of time upon a balance. A more obstinate battle, a more desperate and sanguinary conflict, was scarcely ever witnessed—

And long and doubtful was the bloody combat;  
 And ev'rywhere, on undetermin'd wing,  
 Between both armies, vict'ry seem'd to soar,

when I ordered the musqueteers at once to advance. At the first discharge, the Tanaquians were filled with amazement; for they could form no conception of either what occasioned the thunder and lightning, or whence they came; but on perceiving the dreadful effects that were produced by them, they were all immediately overwhelmed with fright. By the first volley, two hundred tigers fell, among which were two chaplains, whom the balls struck while they were speaking and cheering up the drooping spirits of the soldiers, and inspiring them with courage. Their loss occasioned universal sorrow, because they were considered the two best and most eloquent preachers. When I perceived the consternation of the enemy, I ordered a second volley to be fired. By this discharge the slaughter was still more considerable: the King himself was shot. This bereaved the Tanaquians of all hope, and they immediately took to their heels; the cavalry pursued, and sabred such an immense number of the fugitives, that the dead bodies which covered the field obstructed the victors from marching any further. The conflict being ended, our people counted the slain of the enemy, and found thirteen thousand lying on the field of

battle, who had fallen partly in the engagement, and partly in their flight. The victorious army then advanced into the kingdom of *Tanaqui*, and, after some days' march, pitched their camp before the capital. Everybody was in the mean time seized with terror, and overwhelmed with consternation to such a degree, that the magistrates came in the most submissive and suppliant manner to meet us, and to the victors delivered over the keys of the town, although it was, both by nature and art, extraordinarily well fortified. Its great size, the breadth of its streets, and magnificent buildings, distinguished it as one of the most considerable and illustrious cities I had ever seen. It appeared to me extremely surprising, that the Quamites, who were surrounded on all sides by such enlightened nations, should have remained so long in the darkest ignorance. But it must have been with them, as is the case with certain European nations, who never concern themselves about what takes place abroad, who consider their own peculiar ways the best, hold to their old wont, and remain for that reason in the same common course to all eternity, without ever advancing one single step further. The Tanaquians began, from the time of this great slaughter, a new chronology; and as this decisive battle was fought on the third of the month of *Torul*, they reckoned the same among the unlucky days.

In this month, the planet *Nazar*, whose course round the sun determines the computation of time and the seasons, is at its greatest elongation from this part of the firmament. The whole firmament moves, in like manner, also round the sun; but as the planet's motion is quicker, it appears larger and smaller, according as it is nearer to this or the opposite hemisphere. The astronomical calculations are made from the increase and decrease of the planet *Nazar*, and from the eclipses of the sun. I once, by occasion, thumbed over, in a perfunctory manner, some of the Tanaquitish almanacs, which I found particularly methodical and well finished.

As the capital had surrendered, the rest of the country quickly followed its example. The contempt in which the Quamites had hitherto been held was now changed into respect, and the empire, with the addition of this subjugated kingdom, became nearly of double the importance that it was before. As all this success was unanimously ascribed to my skill, prudence, and activity, the great veneration which they had already for too long a time paid to me was now heightened into a firm divine worship. When I had garrisoned all the towns of this conquered country, in order to keep this fierce and warlike people in subjection, I then again thought seriously on executing the plan

I had commenced—to extirpate entirely the ignorance and barbarism in which the *Quamites* had hitherto slept. In the beginning I experienced great difficulties in introducing the sciences; for the Latin and the smattering of Greek which I had learned in Europe, were not of the least advantage to me here. I found myself, therefore, necessitated to send for twelve erudite tigers from that hostile country. These I appointed professors, and charged them to establish a university, after the model of the academies in their country; and gave orders, that the *Tanaquitish* royal library should be removed to *Quama*. I proposed to myself, in the mean time, as soon as the *Quamites* had made such proficiency in the sciences as to be able to advance alone, to send these borrowed teachers back to their home.

My curiosity to be acquainted with the *Tanaquitish* library was particularly excited by the imprisoned general *Tomopoloko*, who informed me, that among the manuscripts there was a book, the author of which had been upon our globe, and had given a description of several of its countries, especially of those in Europe. The *Tanaquians* had become possessed of this manuscript at a time when they were at war with a very remote power; but the author had concealed his name;

nor was it ever known what countryman he was, or by what means he had ascended to the earth. After having looked all the books through, I found that everything with which *Tomopoloko* had made me acquainted concerning this writing was true; and, therefore, disclosed to him, in confidence, my parentage and the name of my native country; assuring him, that on my arrival I had told the *Quamites* the same; but this stupid people would not give credit to my words, being more inclined to believe, that I was an envoy from the sun, and that they still persisted most pertinaciously in their error. I added, that I considered it wrong to retain any longer so vain a title and that I had at length formed the resolution of disclosing, without reserve, my true descent, by which candid and ingenuous acknowledgment, I considered that I ran no risk of losing the esteem in which I stood, especially as I hoped that, on reading this manuscript, all and every of them would be convinced of how much the Europeans surpass all other mortals in wisdom and virtue. But of this resolution of mine this intelligent and experienced general entirely disapproved; and he expressed his opinion upon the subject in the following words:—"It is necessary, enlightened and illustrious hero, that you should first peruse the book; you will then, perhaps, after having read it, entertain other

thoughts ; for the author either romances, or the *Supra-terraneans* are a foolish, whimsical, freakish, hair-brained, fantastical, capricious, and conceited people, whose manners and morals are corrupt, vicious, and debauched, and whose laws and regulations are more deserving of ridicule than of admiration. When you have read the book, you can then act as to you seems meet ; but I will nevertheless counsel you not to lay aside that title which has inspired the *Quamites* with so high a veneration for you, without mature consideration : for nothing in the world is so well qualified to keep the commonalty in obedience, as a prepossession which they have for the noble disposition and illustrious descent of their chief.”

I followed this advice, and resolved on perusing the book, as it was translated by *Tomopoloko*. The original title of it was “ *Tinian’s* (this name is considered fictitious) *Supra-terraneous Travels ; or, a Description of the Empires, Kingdoms, and Countries on the Earth, and particularly of those in Europe.*” But as the book, through use and old age, was in a very dirty and tattered condition, that part which I was the most curious to see, namely, in what manner the author had ascended to the earth, and how he had got down again, was unfortunately wanting.

The following are the contents of the work just as I found it :—

“ *Fragments from Tinian’s Journal, kept during his Travels upon the Earth ; translated by his Excellency Tomopoloko, General in the Service of his Tanaquitish Majesty.*

\*\*\* “ This country (*Germany*) is called the Roman empire ; but this is merely an empty title, for the Roman monarchy ceased entirely to exist some hundreds of years ago. The language of this country is not easy to be understood, in consequence of its inverted construction ; for that which in other languages is placed in the beginning, is here brought in at the end ; so that it is impossible to get at the meaning of anything before you have read down a whole page. Their form of government is very absurd. They think they have a Regent, when, in truth, they have none. It is said to be one empire, and is, nevertheless, divided into several different principalities, each having its own form of government, so that one neighbour will frequently make a formal declaration of, and carry on, war against another. The whole country is titled ‘ holy,’ although there is not the least trace of holiness to be found in it. • The Regent, or, more correctly speaking, the *un*-regent, who bears the title of Emperor, is always styled, ‘ the Increaser



of the Empire,' although it not unfrequently happens that he is the cause of its being much lessened. He is also denominated 'invincible,' notwithstanding he is often beaten and thrown into a complete dilemma, both by the French and by the Turks. One has not less reason to be astonished at the privileges and liberties of the people; for many have privileges, which they are prohibited from using. Innumerable commentaries have been written, and are there to be found, on the German constitution, but, notwithstanding, they have not advanced it one single step further towards perfection; for \*\*\*

\*\*\* "The capital of this kingdom (*France*), which is very large, is called *Paris*, and may, in certain respects, be considered the capital of Europe; for it exercises a kind of legislative power over all the other European nations. It possesses, for example, the exclusive right of prescribing, nay, even of dictating, in what manner they shall live, and how they shall clothe themselves; so that no dress or fashion is so incommodious and ridiculous, that the rest of Europe is not obliged to adopt, provided the Parisians have thought proper to introduce it. How or when the Parisians have obtained possession of this right, I am quite ignorant. I remarked, however, that this dominion

did not extend to other things ; for several nations in Europe are oft at war with France, and compel her frequently to make peace on tolerably hard terms ; but the slavery in which they hold one quarter of the globe, in regard to the manner of living and the dress, continues, nevertheless, still to exist. In volatile comprehension, eager desire after all that is novel, and inventive fertility of mind, the Parisians resemble much the Martinians.

\*\*\* “From *Bologna* we travelled to *Rome*. This city is subject to a priest, whom they style ‘*His Holiness the Pope*,’ and who is considered the most potent of all emperors, kings, and princes in Europe, notwithstanding a person might be able to travel from one side to the other of his state, in the course of an afternoon. For unlike the other princes, who only rule over the lives and property of their subjects, he can at once doom their souls to eternal destruction. The Europeans in general believe, that this priest has the keys of heaven in his keeping. I was exceedingly curious to get a sight of them ; but all my trouble was to no purpose, and I am still ignorant both of their appearance and of the shrine in which they are deposited. The power which he has and exercises, not only over his own subjects, but over the whole human race, consists principally in his being able to absolve those whom God condemns,

and to condemn those whom God absolves : a truly prodigious authority, which, our Subterraneans are ready to affirm upon oath was never delegated to mortal man. But it is an easy matter to palm anything upon the Europeans, and to induce them to believe the most absurd and monstrous fictions, notwithstanding they consider themselves so exceedingly wise and clever, and, inflated with this conceit, they look down upon all other people, whose manners they term barbarous, with the greatest disdain. I will in no wise attempt to defend our subterranean manners, customs, and regulations ; but will merely quote some of those of the Europeans, in order to show what little right they have to arrogate to themselves a superiority over all other nations.

“ It is a custom, in many places in Europe, to bestrew the hair and clothes with ground and sifted corn, which nature has produced for the food of man. This meal is called *powder*, which at night with great pains is combed out of the hair, in order that it may be ready to receive a fresh sprinkling on the following morning. Another custom, which appeared to me not less ridiculous, was this ;—they have a certain covering or hat for their heads, to protect them from the cold ; but these they generally carry under their arms, even in the depth of winter

—which struck me as being just as absurd as for a person to go through the streets with his coat or his breeches in his hand, exposing that part of the body which ought to be covered, to the inclemency of the weather.

“The religious doctrines of the Europeans are admirable and accordant with sound reason. In the books which contain what they shall believe and do, it is commanded that they shall be constantly and sedulously read, in order to find out their true meaning; and these writings enjoin indulgence and forbearance with the weak and deluded. Nevertheless, he who gives an interpretation differing from that of the great mass of people, of the contents of these books, is immediately cast into prison, scourged, and even sometimes burnt, for his want of judgment. This seemed to me very similar to flogging a man at the cart's tail because his visual organs were imperfect, and caused that which other people found to be square, appear to him completely round. I was informed that, on this account, some thousands of human beings had been beheaded, hanged, and burnt.

“In most of the towns and villages there are certain persons who stand upon elevated places, and inveigh with great austerity against sins in others,

which they themselves are daily committing ; which seemed to me the same as hearing an intoxicated man preach against drunkenness.

“ He who happens to be awry, humpbacked, or to have a halt, on his coming into the world, solicits for the title of high-born, or your Lordship ; and he who is of low extraction, is desirous of being styled right-noble. Both parties, in my opinion, are as preposterous as if a dwarf wished to be thought a giant, and an old man a young fellow.

“ In the large towns, it is almost everywhere the fashion for great people to invite their friends, immediately after dinner, to take some black soup, prepared from burnt beans, which is vulgarly called *coffee*. To the places where this soup is to be taken, they are drawn in a box upon four wheels, by two very strong and wild animals ; for the Europeans consider it extremely indecent to pass through the streets on foot.

“ On the first day of the year, the Europeans are attacked by a certain disorder, which is entirely unknown to the Subterraneans. The symptoms of it are a particular disquiet of the mind and agitation in the head, which are often so violent as not to allow a person on that day to remain five minutes together

in one place. They run like madmen from house to house, without knowing themselves why or wherefore. This sickness will last with many as much as a fortnight ; when, being at length weary with an incessant running about, they again recover their reason, and are restored to their former health.

“ As the Europeans are afflicted with a number of diseases of the mind, an infinite number of remedies has been found out. Some are attacked by a delirious propensity to walk in such a manner through the streets, that their left side is always turned towards the right side of those whom they meet. The further one travels to the north, the more violent is the disease ; from which it is very evident, that it is occasioned by the keenness of the air. The medicament consists in certain stamped leaves with some characters upon them. When the sick persons wear these talismen about them, they gradually recover. Another species of madness is cured by the ringing of small bells, which settles the mind again in quiet : but the effect of this remedy is only transitory ; for after the lapse of two hours the disease returns with a twofold violence.

“ In *France, Italy, and Spain*, the people, during the space of some weeks in the winter, entirely

lose their wits. This madness is cured by strewing ashes upon the foreheads of the maniacs. In the northern part of Europe, where these ashes possess no virtue, nature is obliged to take its course.

“ Most of the Europeans have a custom, three or four times every year, in the presence of witnesses, of entering into a certain solemn covenant with God, which they violate immediately after. This covenant is called *communion*; and it would seem that they enter into it merely to show, that it is a custom with them three or four times in the year to break their vows. When they confess their sins and implore God’s mercy, it commonly takes place according to measure and in certain melodies. Sometimes they have recourse to the assistance of fifes, drums, and trumpets: all those sins, the punishment for which they are desirous of deprecating with music, are enormous indeed.

“ Almost all the nations in Europe are bound to believe and acknowledge the doctrines contained in a certain sacred book. But in the southern countries, the reading of this book is entirely forbidden; so that the people are constrained to believe that which they neither dare read nor look into without the fear of being punished. In the same regions it is also most rigidly forbidden to worship and reverence

the Almighty, excepting in a tongue with which they are completely unacquainted; so that those prayers only are considered lawful and pleasing to God, which are repeated by persons who know not themselves what they are saying.

“ In all large cities, those whom they promote to posts of honour and dignity are paralytic; so that they, like sick people, are carried through the streets in shut-up boxes.

“ Most of the Europeans have their own hair shaved off, and cover their bald pates again with foreign.

“ The learned controversies, which generally occupy the European Academies, consist in the examination of things, the discovery of which is either of no utility whatsoever, or whose nature it is impossible for the human understanding to comprehend.

“ The most learned subjects which the Europeans expose to consideration, relate to a few old boots, shoes, slippers, necklaces, and cloaks, that belong to a nation which has long been extinct. In the sciences, as well ecclesiastical as secular, no one judges for himself, but merely subscribes to the judgment of another. They tell us, that they



believe him, whom, in all things, they know to be the wisest: against this I have not the least objection, if raw and ignorant people are capable of knowing anything about the matter. But to decide who is wise, and who is not, requires a person to be wise himself.

“ In the large towns and villages in the southern countries, a number of cakes, or wafers, are carried about, which the priests give out for gods; and the most wonderful and astonishing is, that the bakers themselves, notwithstanding the dough of which they are made is still sticking to their fingers, affirm, upon oath, that these cakes have created both heaven and earth.

“ The *English* prefer their liberty to everything else; and none are in this nation slaves, with the exception of the married women. In matters of religion, they reject to-day that which they professed yesterday. This changeableness I attributed to the situation and climate of the country; for as they are islanders and seamen, their fluctuating element has, in all probability, some effect upon their minds. They are incessantly inquiring after each other's health, so that a stranger might easily take them all to be physicians; but the question—*How do you do?* is a mere phrase—a simple sound

without the least signification. The inhabitants of this island file, point, and sharpen, their understanding and imaginative faculty to such a degree, that numbers of them in the end will not unfrequently lose their senses altogether.

“ There is situated, towards the north, a republic consisting of seven provinces. These are called *United*, notwithstanding there is not the least trace of union or harmony to be found among them. The lower order of people boasts here of its power, and maintain that they direct in the administration of the affairs of state ; although there is no country in the world in which the commonalty is more excluded from public offices than in this, where the government is in the hands of but a very few families.

“ The inhabitants of this state, with anxious and indefatigable diligence, scrape together immense riches, which they, however, are afraid to enjoy ; so that their purses are always full, and their stomachs always empty. A person might almost imagine that they lived upon smoke, which they are continually sucking in through certain reeds or clay-pipes. We must nevertheless allow that these people surpass all others in cleanliness ; for they wash everything, with the exception of their hands.

“ In divers large and small towns in the north of Europe, the watchmen patrol the streets during the night, and in a singing, or rather a bellowing or braying, tone, every hour wish the inhabitants a good repose ; on which occasions, if they were sunk almost in the eternal sleep of death, these guardians of the night would be sure each time to awake them.

“ Every country has its laws and customs, which are, for the most part, entirely opposed to each other. Thus, for example, according to law, the wife must obey her husband ; but, according to custom, the husband is obedient to the wife.

“ In Europe, those persons are objects of the highest esteem and respect, who live in so prodigal and extravagant a manner, that they not only devour all the produce of the country, but even the country itself ; and no condition of man is so much despised as that which cultivates the earth to feed and nourish these gluttons or gormandizers.

“ To what depth the Europeans are sunk in vice, the many gallowses and places of execution which are everywhere observable will greatly assist in drawing a conclusion. Every town has its own hangman. England must, however, altogether be

excepted ; where I believe there are no hangmen, as the inhabitants of this country most commonly hang themselves.

“ I entertain a strong suspicion that the Europeans are cannibals ; for they shut up whole multitudes of fresh and hale young fellows in certain enclosures, that are called cloisters, for the purpose of making them plump, sleek, and fat ; which seldom fails to have the desired effect, as they are exempt from every kind of labour, and have nothing else to care for, in these gardens of pleasure, but the indulging and pampering themselves.

“ The Europeans commonly drink water every morning in order to cool their stomachs ; but scarcely have they, by this means, quenched the flame, than they have immediate recourse to the brandybottle, for the purpose of warming them again.

“ The religion in Europe is divided into two principal sects—the Roman-Catholic, and the Protestant. Some Protestants worship only one God, and the generality but three: the Catholics numberless ; for they have as many gods and goddesses as they have towns and villages. All these gods and goddesses are created by the Pope, or high-priest of Rome ; and the Pope himself is always created

by certain priests, or cardinals, as they are called. From this may be seen with what power these cardinals are invested, since they are able to create the creators of gods.

“ The ancient inhabitants of *Italy* subdued the whole world, and yielded to their wives ; the present inhabitants, on the contrary, ill use their wives, and yield to the whole world.

“ The animals in Europe are divided into two classes—those which live on the land, and those which are aquatic. There are some, however, that are termed amphibious, and are able to exist in both elements. For example: frogs, porpoises, and *Dutchmen* ; for these are inhabitants of morasses,

‘ And live as well in water as on land.’

“ The Europeans eat the same sort of food as ourselves. The *Spaniards* alone live entirely upon air.

“ Trade flourishes everywhere in Europe ; and many things are there sold which we never think of dealing in. For instance: in *Rome*, seats in heaven are sold ; in *Switzerland*, they sell them-

selves; and in \*\*\*\*, the crown, sceptre, and regalia, are all put up to public auction.

“ Indolence is, in *Spain*, a sure sign of a well-bred man; thus, nothing is a greater proof of genuine nobility than sleep.

“ Those people are everywhere denominated orthodox who know not what they believe, and who are unwilling to give themselves the trouble of examining into what they hear. There are many, who, merely on account of this negligence and thoughtless indolence, are introduced among the number of the saints; while they, on the contrary, who are solicitous about their eternal destiny, and who dive deeply into, and weigh, and investigate, and scrutinize, all things appertaining to religion, are, for the least swerving from the ruling opinion, condemned to all eternity.

“ The Europeans, in general, believe that everlasting bliss, or eternal damnation, is not the consequence of men's actions during their lives, or the performance or negligence of their duties, but depends entirely on the place in which they were born; for they all conceive, that had they been born in another country, and of other parents, they would have had a quite different belief. They

appear, therefore, not to condemn people so much on account of their exercising this or that religion, as because they happened to be born in this or that place; which I can by no means find to be consonant with the justice and goodness of the Divine Creator.

“ Among their authors, those are in the highest repute and esteem, who distort and invert the natural order of style, and render that, which in itself was clear and perspicuous, completely obscure and wholly unintelligible. These writers are denominated ‘ Poets,’ and their transposition of words is called ‘ Poetry.’ This is, however, far from being sufficient to form a genuine and legitimate poet; for it is highly essential that he should at the same time be capable of lying most abominably. For this reason a certain old fellow of the name of *Homer*, who proved himself master of both the requisites, is there worshipped with an almost divine adoration. Numbers endeavour to imitate his transposition of order and falsification of truth; but none, as I was informed, could at all attain to his perfection.

“ The cultivators of literature purchase books in great abundance; not so much, however, for their contents, as on account of their elegant binding

and large size. The booksellers, who know how to profit by this book-parade, have the trick of reprinting wretched and common works in a new size, with a different type, and illustrated at the same time with numerous plates, which, when bound in an elegant manner, are sure of a rapid sale at a price of more than double their value. It must here be remarked, that the sciences form there a branch of commerce, and that philosophers and other authors are reckoned among the most respectable merchants. Simpletons commonly write more books than any other persons, as if they were afraid that the fame of their stupidity would not otherwise be handed down to posterity.

“The academies in Europe greatly resemble so many commercial Exchanges, where degrees, promotions, dignities, and such-like scientific merchandize are sold at moderate and reasonable prices; and which here, in the subterraneous world, are not obtained without much labour and fatigue, and many years’, both night and day, regular and close application to study. Those are styled Doctors, who have attained the highest pitch of human learning; or, as the Europeans term it, who have reached the summit of Mount Parnassus, which is the abode of nine young virgins. Next to them follow the Magistri, who purchase their learned titles at a



lower rate, and are, therefore, considered a good deal less omniscient. From this it may be seen how much benevolence and complaisance prevail in the supra-terrestrial Universities in favour of mankind, where the road to learning is made so easy and commodious. The northern academies are in this respect a little more particular, as they never confer either honours or dignities without a previous examination.

“ The learned and illiterate are distinguished from each other by a difference in dress and manners ; but more especially by a difference in religion. The first, for the most part, believe in only one God : the others, on the contrary, worship a plurality of gods and goddesses. The principal deities of the learned are *Apollo*, *Minerva*, the nine Muses, and some other lesser whole or half gods, whom the poets invoke when they are seized with a fit of raving. The learned are divided, according to their various studies, into different classes, as philosophers, poets, grammarians, metaphysicians, and so forth.

“ A Philosopher is a scientific shopkeeper, who, at a certain fixed price, sells prescripts for self-denials, temperance, moderation, and poverty ; and preaches so long against riches, that he becomes

rich himself. The father of the philosophers is one *Seneca*, who, through pursuing this line of conduct, amassed a princely fortune.

“ A Poet is a man who makes an ostentation with printed nonsense, falsehoods, and extravagant effusions of a disordered brain. Delirium is therefore a strong characteristic of a truly sublime poet. All who express their ideas with perspicuity and simplicity are deemed unworthy of the laurel-wreath.

“ The Grammarians compose a kind of military state, which disturbs the public tranquillity. They are distinguished from all other warriors by their particular uniforms, which, instead of being of divers colours, are all black ; and instead of a sword, their weapon is a pen. These heroes fight with as much obstinacy about a letter or a word, as those in coloured uniforms do for country and liberty. I am inclined to believe, that the governments maintain this class of people for the sole purpose of preventing mankind, during a time of peace, from getting diseased through the enjoyment of too much tranquillity. Sometimes, however, when these learned warriors carry things to such a pitch as to threaten with an effusion of blood, the magistracy is obliged to interpose its authority ; which, as I heard, was

the case some time previous in Paris, where the Supreme Council, in consequence of the controversy between the Doctors respecting Q and K assuming so serious an aspect, was at length compelled to issue a decree permitting both these letters to be used.

“ A Naturalist is a person who searches into the bowels of the earth; who closely examines the nature of the biped, quadruped, and polyped animals, worms, and insects; and who, in short, knows everything but himself.

“ A Metaphysician alone perceives that which is concealed from every other person; he knows, describes, and unfolds, the true essence of ghosts and of the soul, as well as all that is, and all that is not; but who, because of his too quick sight, is not able to discern anything that lies immediately before him.

“ Such is the state of the republic of letters in Europe. I could quote many more absurdities; but these will suffice to give the reader an idea of the principal ones, from which he will be enabled to judge how far the Europeans have a right to consider themselves the only sages in existence. We must, however, allow that the supra-terrestrial

Doctors and Magistri have a much greater facility in acquiring a superior education, than our subterraneous literati ; for there are professors of languages and sciences, who not only teach that which they themselves have learned, but also that whereof they have not the slightest knowledge. We find it a difficult matter enough, by any means, to instil into the minds of others what we ourselves know ; but to teach them that in which we are totally unskilled, we can scarcely form the least conception of. There are many among the European literati who ardently cultivate both theology and philosophy. As philosophers, they doubt of all things ; and, as theologians, they believe in all that is said shall come to pass. The Europeans are animated with the same desire for study as we Subterraneans ; but become learned in a much shorter period. For this advantage they are indebted to a certain magical invention (literary journals, catalogues, dictionaries, encyclopædiæ, &c.), with the help of which they are enabled to read at least fifty books in the course of an afternoon.

“ The Supra-terraneans are exceedingly devout, and particularly fervent in their prayers. They do not, however, in the latter case, conform and yield to the impulse and emotion of the soul, but regulate themselves after the ringing of bells, clocks,

and sun-dials ; so that their devotion is perfectly mechanical, and is determined more by outward signs, old habits and customs, and certain hours, than by any inward feelings. . How unceasing they are in their prayers and invocations, a person will easily conclude, when informed that the greatest part of them, while engaged in scouring the house, splitting fire-wood, or performing any other handiwork, are continually singing psalms and divine hymns.

“ On my arrival in *Italy*, I looked upon myself as the lord of the whole country ; for every one whom I met called himself my slave. I took it once into my head to put this submissive obedience to the test, and commanded my landlord to accommodate me with his wife for a night ; but at this he became exasperated to an extraordinary degree, and ordered me to pack up immediately and quit his house : as I, however, rather delayed yielding to his mandate, he made no ceremony, but kicked me, bag and baggage, into the street.

“ In the *North*, the inhabitants are extremely desirous of obtaining titles of offices which are not in existence ; and all are so eager to pass on the right side, that they seem to fall but little short

of having completely lost their wits. Moreover  
 \* \* \* \* \*

My patience was now exhausted : and I was so inflamed with rage, that I threw the book away ; assuring *Tomopoloko*, who was present at the time, that it was nothing but a fiction, a downright fabrication, of some unreasonable, morose, and splenetic scribbler. But when the first heat of my passion had abated, I began to judge more mildly of these historical travels ; particularly on perceiving that the author, although both unjust and unreasonable in most of his pieces, had still not always swerved entirely from the truth ; but had in many respects hit the point to a tittle. I now determined on following the advice of *Tomopoloko*, and cherishing carefully the erroneous supposition formed by the *Quamites* in regard to my birth ; as I found it more advisable, for the execution of my plans, to pass for an extraordinary envoy from the sun, than a mere simple European townsman.

As all the neighbours had now for a length of time remained in a state of perfect tranquillity, and I in the mean-while had availed myself of the advantageous peace, to regulate the state according to my wishes, we suddenly received information, that

three of the most powerful nations, namely, the *Arctonians*, *Kispusians*, and *Alectorians*, had formed an alliance against the *Quamites*. The first consisted of *Bears*,—a very hardy and warlike nation, who were endowed with reason and the power of speech. The *Kispusians* were all *Cats* of an extraordinary size, and for their subtlety and judgment universally renowned; and who, not so much by physical strength, as by crafty inventions, finesse, and stratagems, had constantly borne up against their most powerful enemies. The *Alectorians*, from their being able to fight as well in the air as upon the earth, were extremely formidable to cope with. They were *Cocks*, armed with bows and poisoned arrows, which seldom missed, and which inflicted mortal wounds.

These three nations were enraged at the extraordinary success of the *Quamites*, and the overthrow of the *Tanaquians*. In order to put a stop to the *Quamitish* power, which appeared to them to exceed all bounds, they entered into this common alliance; but before they published any declaration of war, they dispatched envoys to *Quama*, who demanded the freedom of the *Tanaquians*, and declared war in a formal manner against the Emperor, in case the same were refused. By my advice, they were dismissed with the following answer:—"As the

Tanaquians, who were violators of peace and alliance, had deserved the misery and wretchedness into which their own folly and haughtiness had precipitated them, his Majesty the Emperor of *Quama* had determined, with all his might, to defend to the utmost those possessions he had won in lawful war, against every assailant, without the least fear either of the alliance of these nations or the menaces of any other power." When we had sent away the envoys with the above answer, we immediately made every preparation for the approaching war. Within a short time we had an army on foot consisting of forty thousand men, among whom eight thousand were cavalry and two thousand musqueteers. The Emperor, although very old and decrepit, resolved to make the campaign with us in person; and was so incited by a desire for honour, that neither the representations nor persuasions of his wife, his children, or myself, could prevail upon him to abandon his inflexible purpose. That which in this state of things caused me the most uneasiness, were the doubts and suspicion I entertained respecting the Tanaquians, who, impatient for their freedom, would, I feared, seize the first opportunity to throw off the yoke and go over to the enemy. As I had surmised, so it turned out; for no sooner had the declaration of war been made, than it came to our knowledge,



that twelve thousand fully equipped Tanaquians were gone over to the hostile army ; so that we had at once to contend with four powerful enemies.

In the beginning of the month of *Kilian*, after providing our army with every necessary, I ordered it to break up. Upon our march we were met by our spies, who communicated to us the intelligence, that the allied troops had already made an irruption into *Tanaqui*, and laid siege to, and attacked, the fortress *Sibol*, upon the borders of *Kispusia*, with such impetuosity, that the commandant was upon the point of surrendering. But as soon as they perceived our arrival, they raised the siege and advanced against us. The action was fought in a valley, not far from the besieged fortress ; in consequence of which, from that day to this, it has always been called the battle of *Sibol*. The *Arc-tonians*, who formed the left wing of the hostile army, attacked our cavalry, and made among them a dreadful slaughter ; and as this attack was supported by the revolted *Tanaquians*, it seemed almost as if it were nearly over with us : but the musqueteers advanced to the succour of the cavalry, and by two well-directed volleys, completely overthrew the hostile ranks ; causing the action to assume a very different appearance, and forcing the lately almost victorious enemy by degrees to give

way, until at length he saw himself necessitated to have recourse to a disastrous flight. While this was taking place, the *Kispusians*, on the other side, put our infantry completely to a nonplus. They let fly their arrows with so much dexterity and effect, that in a short time six hundred Quamites were put *hors de combat*, being mortally wounded or killed. Although our cavalry, with the aid of the musqueteers, compelled the enemy to betake himself to flight, yet it was conducted in such a manner, that the ranks maintained their order, and appeared rather to retreat than to fly; which might be ascribed to the skill and experience of their commander, *Monsonius*, who, at that time, in military tactics, claimed the palm from all the subterranean generals. There still remained the *Alectorians*, who were the most difficult to vanquish; for, whenever our musqueteers took aim at them, they soared into the air, and discharged their arrows down upon our heads with so much effect, that very few of our men who fell were able to rise again. They always hit their mark; for it is much surer and easier to shoot from above, than from below; but our shot, on the contrary, by reason of the continual fluttering and motion of the enemy, mostly missed. In the midst of the hottest part of the conflict, our Emperor, while riding about and cheering the soldiers where the danger

was the greatest, was unfortunately struck in the neck by a poisoned arrow ; and after having contended against the enemy with the courage of a lion, fell from his horse, mortally wounded. He was immediately borne from the action into his tent, where very shortly after he yielded up the ghost. In this state of uncertainty and doubt, I considered it the most advisable to impose silence upon all who had witnessed the melancholy event, in order that the combatants might not lose courage at the news of their Emperor's death. I went, therefore, immediately among them, and bade them be of good cheer ; telling them that their sovereign had only fainted in consequence of the violence of the blow, and that the wound was not deep nor dangerous. As, through this artifice, the greatest number of the army remained ignorant of what had befallen the Emperor, the battle continued till midnight ; when the *Alectorians*, exhausted with labour and covered with wounds, retreated to their camp ; and on the morrow an armistice was signed for several days between the belligerents, for the purpose of burying the dead. I now found that I must have recourse to some new stratagem, in order to subdue these formidable winged enemies ; and, therefore, during the armistice, I ordered the musket-balls to be cast over again into small shot. This expedient proved of the greatest utility ; for

the *Alectorians*, in the next engagement, were, by means of our showers of hail, quickly brought down headlong from their aërial position, and in this manner one half of their army was slain. The rest immediately laid down their arms, and in the most submissive manner supplicated for peace. The *Arctonians* and *Kispusians* followed their example, and surrendered themselves, together with their arms and all their fortresses, into our hands.

As all these affairs were now fortunately brought to a conclusion,

I assembled the chiefs of the people, the elders,  
And heads of the troops, all in council together,  
And while to me they with attention listened,  
The following discourse I to them addressed:—

“Noble, valiant, and renowned warriors! I doubt not of its being well known to most of you, with what anxiety and concern I dissuaded his Majesty, the Emperor, from risking his valuable life in this campaign. But his innate bravery and martial courage, his heroic and intrepid spirit, did not suffer him to remain at home in quiet, while we were venturing our lives against his mortal enemies. Verily, this is the only request that his Imperial Majesty has at any time refused to grant me. O!

that his Majesty had been more scrupulous about other matters, and had condescended to yield to this ! we should not then have found ourselves in this unfortunate situation, into which his unexpected death has plunged us ; but our entry into the imperial capital would have been triumphal, and our joy, and that of the whole nation, for so many glorious achievements, would have been perfect, —unmixed with grief and tormenting affliction ! I neither can nor ought to conceal any longer the lamentable and melancholy event, which has given each of us a deeper wound than all the arrows of the enemy put together could have inflicted. Know, then, that your Emperor, in the hottest of the conflict, when he was contending against the enemy with that bravery and courage which were peculiar to himself, was struck by an unlucky arrow, and shortly after expired. Most shocking and heart-rending event ! what sorrow, what universal grief, will the loss of this prince spread through the Empire ! let not your courage, however, entirely sink ! the illustrious hero has ceased to die ; but not to live. Your Emperor is not dead to you ! he again lives in two young princes, his sons, the very images of their excellent father, and no less the inheritors of his virtues than of his Empire. You have not changed your Emperor, but only the name : and as Prince *Timuso*, the first born, will be

invested with the imperial dignity, and receive his father's crown, I shall henceforth consider myself as General under his sceptre. Long live Timuso! to him we will all do every homage! to him we will swear eternal fidelity! and him, from this day forward, we will honour and obey."

## CHAPTER XIV.

---

THE AUTHOR IS ELECTED MONARCH IN THE SUBTERRANEAN  
REGIONS.

---

WHEN I had concluded my discourse, they all cried out with a loud voice—" *Pikilsu shall be our Emperor!*" On hearing them pronounce these words, I was completely overwhelmed with consternation, and begged of them, with tears in my eyes, not to forget the fidelity and allegiance which they owed to the Imperial family, nor the benefits which the deceased monarch had conferred upon each of them in particular, and upon all in general; as, through such ingratitude, they would affix a stain on the character of the nation, which would for ever remain indelible. I added, that I was nevertheless willing, as a private individual, still to render them all the service in my power, if

they considered my feeble efforts could in any degree tend to their advantage. But my words were of no avail—

They only served to heat their ardour more,  
And for *Pikilsu* make them louder roar.

Indeed, the shouts of the soldiers, mingled with the cries of their officers, made the whole camp several times resound with the above named word. I covered my head, withdrew from the place, and repaired to my own tent, ordering the sentinel not to permit any person whatever to enter; for I hoped that the soldiers, as soon as the first ardour of their zeal had abated, would be of a different way of thinking. But the officers and men crowded into the tent by force, and placed the crown upon my head, in spite of every resistance that I made to prevent them. They then conducted me out, and, under the sound of kettle-drums and trumpets, proclaimed me *Emperor of Quama, King of Tanaqui, Arctonia, and Alectoria, and Grand Duke of Kispusia*. When I perceived that things were not likely to be altered, I no longer opposed my own good fortune: and I must acknowledge, that this high degree of dignity was by no means repugnant to my feelings; for an Empire, with three kingdoms and a grand dukedom,



were allurements that might have led any other person into temptation. I sent deputies immediately to the Prince; acquainting him with what had taken place, and advising him that he should strenuously maintain that right to which his birth entitled him, by declaring this unlawful election as null and void; but I determined within myself, at the same time, not to give up an empire so readily, the government of which had been voluntarily offered to me. In reality, I dispatched this deputation for the sole purpose of ascertaining the true sentiments of the Prince. As this young man was endowed with extraordinary talents, and particularly with an acute penetration and solid judgment, he was well aware of the number of lurking-holes that men could find out, and the expedients they could adopt, in order to insure success to their crafty designs; and, therefore, seeing that my modesty was only feigned, he very prudently accommodated himself to his fate, shaped his actions according to existing circumstances, followed the example of the army, and proclaimed me Emperor himself in every part of the capital. Thither I was carried in triumph, attended by several Generals, and there received by the acclamations of the people; and in the course of a few days my coronation was celebrated with much state and magnificence. Thus was I metamorphosed from a poor shipwrecked

slave into a potent monarch. In order to form a still closer alliance between myself and the people of *Quama*, and as much by private as by public acts to establish my power, I married the daughter of the deceased Emperor; for I remarked that my subjects still loved and honoured the old imperial family. The name of this Princess was *Ralac*, and

She'd cheeks like the newly blown rose,  
Her eyes did the brilliants eclipse,  
Though a little awry was her nose,  
Yet coral-red were her two lips.

As I had now adjusted so many affairs of importance, I began to devise new means by which I might extend my empire, and cause it to be dreaded by the whole of the subterraneous world. My thoughts at first were principally employed upon how I should best keep the lately conquered nations in subjection. To this end, I caused several large forts to be built, and placed strong garrisons in them : the subjugated people I used with mildness, and promoted many of them to eminent situations in the capital. I showed in particular so much benevolence towards the two captive Generals, *Tomopoloko* and *Monsonius*, that numbers of the *Quamites* became, in consequence, exceedingly jealous ;

although they did not suffer their envy and dissatisfaction to be perceived. This spark of brooding malice, which remained long smouldering in the ashes, burst forth, as I shall hereafter relate, at length into an open flame. At home I endeavoured to bring the arts and sciences—but more particularly the art of war—to the highest state of perfection: and as this country abounded in thick forests and trees, proper and suitable for ship-building, I strove, with all my energy and force, to fit out a fleet of men of war, built after the models of the European ships; and however I was overburdened with other business, this I considered of so much importance, that I gave up everything else for the moment, in order to prosecute my design. In this work I availed myself of the assistance of the Kispusians, who were tolerably well experienced in naval affairs, and I afterwards appointed *Monsonius* to be Admiral of the fleet.

I caused timber to be hewn, and tools and implements to be forged; and carried on the undertaking with so much spirit and activity, that on the sixtieth day from the time of the trees being felled, I had a fleet of twenty ships at sea. As everything succeeded according to my mind, I now considered myself a second *Alexander*; for it was my intention to make here as much display of

ostentation, as he had made upon our globe. The rage for universal dominion is always increasing, and knows no bounds. Some few years before, a curacy, the situation of writer, or the mean office of parish-clerk, was the summit of my ambition. I durst then not venture to hope for more ; but now, with four or five kingdoms, I felt by no means satisfied : so that I, in respect to my passionate desire for fame, which continued to increase with my power and means, had never been more needy, and had never experienced so pressing a necessity as at present.

I was informed by the Kispusian Captains as well in regard to the navigation of the seas, as of the state of the adjacent countries ; and I learnt, that in the course of eight days, with a favourable wind, we should be able to reach the coast of the Empire of *Mezendores* : and as we from that country could easily sail over to *Martinia*, which passage I myself had lately made, I determined on accelerating the departure of the expedition. It was, in truth, the conquest of *Martinia* at which I aimed : partly from a covetous desire for this nation's riches, partly because the *Martinians* were much more experienced in navigation than any other people, and also because I might hereafter need their assistance in executing my grand projects. Besides

these, there was another reason which incited me to subjugate this nation : that was, a desire of revenge. I persuaded the eldest of the Princes to join in the expedition, alleging that it would afford his Imperial Highness an excellent opportunity of displaying his bravery and courage, and exhibiting his abilities ; but my real object was, to keep him as hostage and pledge of the fidelity of the Quamites. The youngest Prince remained at home ; but the reins of government, during my absence, I confided to the Empress, whom I left in a state of pregnancy. The whole fleet consisted of twenty large and small vessels, which were all built and rigged after the manner of the ships of Martinia, and according to the advice, and under the direction, of *Monsonius*, the Kispusian, who himself sketched the plan of them. The *Martinians*, among the Subterraneans, resembled much the *Tyrians* and *Sidonians* in former times, or the *English* and *Dutch* of the present day, in our world, arrogating to themselves the dominion of the sea. But on my arrival in *Martinia*, I presently discovered how much we deviate in the construction of our vessels from the models of the Martinians.

We set sail at a time of the year when the planet *Nazar* was in that part of its orbit, in which it appears only half full. When we had been ploughing

the ocean for three days, we discovered a large island, the inhabitants of which, in consequence of a dissension among them,—which at that time divided them into several parties,—we found might easily be conquered. As they have no fire or other arms, nor understand the use of any weapon but the tongue, their warfare consists of contumelious and reproachful words and dreadful imprecations. In these consist all their punishments and all their war. Criminals with them are cast into prison, and after their trials are over, and a verdict of guilty pronounced against them, they are immediately dragged away to the centre of a large place, called Execution-square, and there publicly reproached, reviled, and imprecated. For this purpose they have certain officers of justice, denominated *Sabuter*, or Revilers, who may be compared with our hangmen and police-officers. The form of these islanders differs from that of other people only in as much as that the females have beards, and the men none; and that all their feet are turned the wrong way first. As soon as we had effected a landing, we met about three hundred *Kanaliskans*,—for so the inhabitants are called,—who looked upon us as enemies, and attacked us with their usual weapons, reproachful language and imprecations. We were informed by an Alectorian, who understood the Kanaliskan language, that the words which they

used against us were remarkably severe and cutting : a clear proof of the perfection to which they had attained in that mode of warfare, and wherein they showed themselves in no wise inferior to the most eminent of our critics. But I well knew, that

Threats, without power,  
Ought only by contempt to be opposed ;

and for that reason forbade any violence to be used against that unarmed people. In order to intimidate these Sabuter, I discharged a pistol among them, which had the desired effect ; for they all threw themselves immediately on their knees, and humbly implored for mercy. I gave afterwards audience to all the principal petty Kings of this island, who, in the most submissive manner, came and surrendered themselves, and their subjects, to our superior force,—making the whole nation tributary to our Empire. It was no shame or disgrace for them, they said, to be vanquished by him who was invincible ; and they could, without tarnishing their honour, submit to him whom kind fortune had raised above every other being. As this island was now become tributary to us, by which my power was in some degree extended, though my renown was in no wise heightened, nor had I, through this victory over so unwarlike a people,

acquired much glory, we weighed anchor, and after a few days' favourable passage, arrived within sight of the coast of *Mezendores*. Here I held a council of war, for the purpose of deliberating whether it were advisable to make an immediate attack, or first to dispatch Envoys to the Emperor and summon him, in order to spare the effusion of blood, to surrender without resistance. The greatest number of the officers present thought it better, and that it would show a much more noble mind, to send Envoys. I therefore dispatched five persons on this special embassy: a Quamite, an Arctonian, an Alectorian, a Tanaquian, and a Kispusian. On their arrival at the Imperial residence, the commandant of the castle, in the name of the Emperor, demanded—

What object had brought them,  
O'er the deep's raging billows, to visit their land?

The Envoys answered—

No stars erratic, no delusive light, no storm,  
Have hitherwards led or driven us: by our own  
Freewill we to your land direct have steer'd our course ;

and then handed over the letter addressed to the Emperor, which was of the following tenor :—



“ We, *Niels Klim*, Envoy from the Sun, Emperor of Quama, King of Tanaqui, Arctonia, and Alec-toria, Grand Duke of Kispusia, and Ruler of Kanaliska, send to the Emperor of *Mezendores* and *Miklopolatu*, greeting. We hereby publish and make known to all whom it may concern, that it is ordained by the invariable Council of Heaven, that all empires and kingdoms in the world shall submit to the power of Quama ; and as the decree of Providence is irrevocable, the empire of your Majesty must necessarily share the same fate. We therefore counsel your Majesty to surrender voluntarily, and not to suffer matters to be carried to extremities, through a temerarious opposition to our victorious arms. By a voluntary submission the effusion of innocent blood will be spared, and your Majesty will experience a much milder fate than if resistance be offered.—Given on board of our fleet, the third day of the month of *Rimat*.”

After the expiration of some days, the Envoys returned with an answer couched in very impertinent and haughty language. I now abandoned all thoughts of gaining my end by any pacific measures, and therefore immediately landed my forces. When I had drawn up my troops in order of battle, I sent out spies to reconnoitre the disposition of the enemy.

These returned in great haste, with the information that an hostile army, which consisted of sixty thousand lions, tigers, elephants, bears, and monstrously frightful birds of prey, was advancing against us. We took up a convenient position and awaited the enemy's arrival. As everything was ready, and the signal given to commence the attack, four foxes, in the capacity of plenipotentiaries, were sent off by the hostile party to treat with us on the subject of peace ; but after these personages had conversed for some hours with the principal officers of our army, whom I had nominated to negotiate with them, they departed without having effected anything. We now entertained no doubt that they came more in the character of spies than of plenipotentiaries ; and that they were sent for the sole purpose of reconnoitring the state of our army. On quitting our camp, they gave it out that they should quickly return with fresh powers ; but on our perceiving immediately after, that the hostile forces were advancing against us, and that all hopes of peace had vanished, we marched from our position, and made an impetuous attack at once upon the whole line of the enemy. The battle was long and obstinate ; and although our musquetry caused in the beginning dreadful slaughter among the enemy, yet the elephants were able to preserve their ranks entire, as the hardness and thickness

of their hides prevented our bullets from penetrating. But as soon as we began to thunder with our heavy artillery, and the elephants perceived the horrible effect that it produced, they were immediately overwhelmed with fright, and fled precipitately in all directions.

In this engagement we killed three and thirty thousand Mezendorians, and made two thousand prisoners. Those who escaped from the action fled to the capital, which was a strong fortress, and there proclaimed the disastrous event. We followed up this victory, and prosecuted our march towards the Emperor's residence, which, after having three times pitched our camp, we reached, and laid siege to, both by land and by water. As we approached the city, we were met by another embassy, which sued for peace on much more reasonable terms than the former. The Emperor offered me his daughter, the most beautiful young lioness in Mezendores, in marriage, together with the half of his empire as her dowry. The terms displeased me, especially that part of them which related to the marriage; for I considered it both dangerous and unlawful to repudiate my wife, whom I had left behind me in a state of pregnancy, and marry a lioness: I therefore dismissed the Envoys without any answer. I now planted cannon

before the walls of the city, which, although built of stone, were quickly demolished. As the town swarmed with a great diversity of animals, the sole inhabitants of the State, the strangest medley of noises, such as roaring, howling, yelling, neighing, braying, hissing, &c. was heard promiscuously, as would defy the most fruitful imagination to form the smallest conception of. The snakes concealed themselves in chinks in the earth; and the birds, which through fright soared into the air, quitted the besieged town, and sought refuge in the cliffs and on the tops of mountains. The trees shook and trembled to that degree, that their leaves fell off and entirely covered the streets. Twenty maids of honour; lilies and roses, on hearing the first cannon-shot fired, were so seized with terror and overwhelmed with consternation, that they immediately withered and died. Whole troops of the inhabitants, among whom, in consequence of their packing themselves, through fright, so closely together in their small habitations, a very contagious disease had broken out, now ran about the city, wringing their hands in most wretched state of despair. The elephants, who possessed a greater share of courage than any of the others, became, from the repeated thundering of the cannon, so terrified, that they at length quitted their shaking houses, and ran about the streets in despair like the rest.

The Emperor of Mezendores now lost all hope ; he therefore called his council together, and spoke as follows :—

In vain, good citizens, we're making war  
Against the unquestionable power of God,  
Which no disaster e'er can weaken,—which,  
By arms of mortals, ne'er can be subdued !  
I therefore now have summon'd you together,  
That each his sentiments may speak aloud,  
And give his best advice ; and say what steps  
We ought to take, to avert the impending storm.

All answered at once with a loud voice, and said :—

Away with war ! make peace ! for peace it is  
We all desire !

The Emperor immediately after surrendered himself, together with the whole of his country ; and I in one day obtained the dominion over this spacious empire, with ten kingdoms, and as many principalities ; for all the petty Princes and Stadtholders followed the Emperor's example, and vied with each other in eagerness to submit.

After this extraordinary success, I garrisoned the capital with six hundred men, and had the Emperor brought prisoner on board of our fleet. Upon

the whole voyage home I used him with much kindness ; and on our arrival in *Quama* I granted him an entire province, which yielded a sufficiency to enable this captive Prince to live according to his rank. On our way we demanded hostages from most of the nations which had been under the dominion of the Emperor of *Miklopolatu*, and by means of threats I got, within a short time, everything into my power that belonged to *Mezendores*. These people, for the most part, were the same whom I have already described on my voyage to *Martinia*. We now left the Mezendorian land, and steered for *Martinia*, the coast of which we at length descried, after a long but favourable passage. I never in my life beheld a more delightful prospect ; for when I reflected, that I, in the character of Emperor and Ruler of so many States, was again in sight of that country in which I had been condemned to the galleys, the joy that I felt is not to be described. At first I determined on making myself immediately known, in order the more to terrify the Martinians ; but I afterwards changed my mind, as I considered it more advisable to keep alive that odd kind of fancy which the conquered people had once entertained regarding my birth and mission from the Sun.

I now hoped, that within a short time, and that

too without much trouble, I should be able to subjugate the Martinians, whose cowardice I well knew ; for they were a people by nature prone to voluptuousness, and who, in consequence of their riches and the great variety of pleasures both the land and the sea afforded them, as well as their constant good fortune, were become more and more debauched. But experience had taught me, that this was a difficult and dangerous undertaking. By the extensive trade which they carried on in the subterraneous world, they had amassed an immense treasure, with which they could immediately procure auxiliary troops from the most warlike nations. Besides, no people in the subterraneous world had brought seamanship and naval tactics to so high a state of perfection as the Martinians, and our ships were far from being equal to theirs in sailing. A person will easily imagine to himself what sort of vessels they must have been, which a *Baccalaureus Philosophiæ* had caused to be built in haste ; and what kind of a judgment the English, Dutch, or Danes, would have formed of them. But our cannon, with the use of which the Martinians were wholly unacquainted, compensated in a great measure for this defect.

Before I undertook anything hostile, I dispatched Envoys to the Grand Council with similar offers of

peace as those I had made to the Emperor of Mezen-dores. While we were expecting an answer, we perceived an immense and well-equipped fleet in full sail bearing down upon us. We ranged our ships in line and waited their arrival, when I made the signal for attack. The engagement continued long, and was obstinately contested. Instead of cannon, the Martinians made use of a kind of machine, with which they threw stones of an enormous size into our vessels, that greatly damaged them. They had, besides, several fire-ships filled with pitch, rosin, brimstone, and other combustibles; with one of which our largest vessel was set on fire, and entirely destroyed. In consequence of this disaster, the victory at the commencement was very dubious; and my people were already wavering, and seemed undetermined whether to fight or fly, when our well-directed cannon at once so completely discouraged the Martinians, that they found themselves necessitated to sheer off and take refuge in their harbours. We were unable on this occasion to capture one single ship from the enemy, as they sailed so much faster than ours, and were consequently quickly beyond pursuit. The battle being over, we now landed our troops and marched with all possible speed for *Martinia*, the capital. On the route we met our Envoys returning, whom the Council had received in a very haughty manner,



and whom they had dismissed with the following words :—

Away ! away ! announce it to your King,  
That we alone are rulers of the deep !  
And bid him in a mountain-cave conceal himself !

For as the Martinians arrogated to themselves the dominion of the sea, they had treated the overtures of a mountaineer king with contempt. They commenced, however, immediately to beat up for troops ; and all the inhabitants of Martinia, who were able to bear arms, were at once equipped.

We had not marched many miles, before we perceived an immense army, consisting of people of many nations, advancing to meet us. This confidence and extraordinary daringness, which the enemy exhibited so shortly after his unfortunate defeat at sea, filled us with a good deal of alarm. But all these troops might have been compared to a meteor ;

For when they heard our trumpets sound to arms,  
Amaz'd they stood, and fill'd with dire alarms ;

and on the first discharge of our heavy artillery, they all betook themselves to a precipitate flight. We pursued, and made a dreadful slaughter among

them. How many had fallen on the side of the enemy, we were in some measure able to judge of, from the periwigs which we collected together after the battle; for on counting them we concluded that about five thousand Martinians must have been slain. The wigs I noticed were not of the same shape as those which I had originally made them, and I counted no less than twenty different sorts,—a clear proof of the ingenuity and superior inventive faculty of this people.

After the action, or rather when the slaughter was at an end, we took possession of the capital, without the least hindrance or opposition. For as soon as we had prepared everything for the siege, and placed cannon in front of the city, the Senate repaired to our camp, and in a very submissive manner surrendered up the place, together with the whole country, into our hands. Peace was now concluded, and we made a solemn entry into the capital. When we had got within the gates, I remarked not the least signs of alarm, which fear usually occasions in conquered towns; tranquillity and silent melancholy seemed everywhere to prevail. Some were sitting with their eyes fixed on the ground: others were irresolute and wavering as to what they should take with them, and what they should leave behind; others, again, were stand-

ing before their doors, bewildered and perplexed, gazing at their houses as if they saw them for the last time. I suffered no excesses or outrages to be committed in the town; and their melancholy, in consequence, was soon changed to gladness. I was now conducted into the public treasury, and was really amazed on beholding the enormous riches that were there deposited; a great part of which I distributed among my soldiers, and the remainder I ordered to be taken to my own treasury. I then placed a garrison in *Martinia*, and took away several senators, as hostages, on board of my ships: among these were the burgomaster and his wife, who had falsely charged me with having committed that aggravated misdemeanour for which I was sent into slavery. I did not, however, revenge myself on account of this mockery; for I considered it unbecoming the character of so great a monarch, to punish for wrongs he had suffered while in no higher a capacity than that of a beast of burden.

The *Martinians* being now conquered, I next resolved upon bringing the neighbouring nations also under subjection; but while we were preparing for this purpose, there arrived Envoys from four kingdoms which voluntarily placed them-

selves under our dominion. I now reigned over so many countries, that I considered it not at all worth while to inquire after the names of these States which had lately submitted, but contented myself with comprehending them all under the name of *the Martinian Empire*.

## CHAPTER XV.

## A SUDDEN CHANGE OF FORTUNE.

AFTER I had achieved so many glorious and extraordinary enterprises, and our fleet had experienced a considerable increase by the addition of the *Martinian* ships, we set sail on our return to *Quama*, into which place I made my entry with a pomp that far out-lustred all the Roman triumphs which we have ever read of. And really my exploits were deserving of every imaginable honour; for what heroic achievement could with propriety be called greater or more glorious than that of metamorphosing, in so short a period, an ignorant and despised race of people, who were exposed to every outrage and affront, into rulers over the whole subterraneous world? What could redound more to the honour and credit of a man, who lived as I did, among such a diversity of creatures, which

had not the slightest resemblance of myself, than to regain and restore to human-kind that dominion with which nature had originally invested them over all other animals? To give a full description of the state and magnificence of this triumphal entry, the concourse of people assembled on this joyous occasion, and the acclamations with which I was received by all ranks and classes of the Quamites, both old and young,—the language which could be written in a folio volume would be found not nearly commensurate to the interesting matter; much less am I, therefore, able, in this small work, to pen down words adequate to convey even the most indistinct idea of the truly affecting scene. This point of time forms in history a new epocha, from which may be reckoned the existence of *five* grand monarchies; namely, the *Assyrian*, the *Persian*, the *Grecian*, the *Roman*, and the *Subterranean of Quama*; which latter, in extent and power, far exceeds any of the others. I, for that reason, could not refuse to take the title of *Koblu*, or the *Great*, which the Quamites and all the subjugated nations were emulous in conferring upon me. I must acknowledge that the title of *Great* is both presumptuous and lofty: but if the martial deeds of a *Cyrus*, an *Alexander*, a *Pompey*, or a *Cæsar*, were compared with mine, they would be found much less in magnitude, as well as in brilliancy; and this

title would then, in consequence, be considered, by that part of the world which is liberal enough to do every justice to a man's merits, as being by far too modest. True it is, that *Alexander* conquered several of the Oriental nations ; but with what sort of troops ? With none but veteran soldiers, who had been long inured to hardships and incessant war ; such were the Macedonians, in his father *Philip's* time. But I subdued a number of States, the inhabitants of which were far more numerous and warlike than the *Persians*, and that, too, in a much shorter time, and with people who not long before were wild barbarians, whose habits I had completely moulded to my will, and whom I had instructed in the art of war. The title which I afterwards used was as follows :—*Niels the Great, Envoy from the Sun, Emperor of Quama and Mezendores, King of Tanagui, Alectoria, Arctonia, of the Mezendorian and Martinian Empires, Grand Duke of Kispusia, Ruler over Martinia and Kanaliska, &c. &c. &c.*

Now founded was

This mighty empire : the child of fortune then  
I seem'd to be ; but none, alas ! before  
Their wearisome career on earth is ended,  
Ought to be call'd by such an appellation.

For when I had attained to this high degree of

power and prosperity, which far exceeded even my most sanguine expectations, I followed the same course as those persons usually pursue, who, from a mean extraction, rise in the world to great honour and preferment. I forgot my former condition, and my hitherto modest deportment degenerated into arrogance and haughtiness. Instead of courting the affections of the people, I now began to show myself both tyrannical and austere towards all, without any exception of rank or age. My subjects, whom I had made so greatly devoted to me through a friendly and courteous deportment, I now regarded as slaves. None obtained an audience of me, unless they fell at my feet; and when any persons were admitted to my presence, I received them with a haughty and forbidding air. This behaviour caused me very soon to be detested, and the affection of my subjects was quickly changed into indifference and fear. How they were affected towards me, I discovered by a request, or rather a command, which I published to the Quamites in a letter patent. The Empress, whom I left in a thriving condition, was, during my absence, brought to-bed of a prince. This infant I was desirous of having nominated as my successor; I therefore ordered a diet of the States to be held, and summoned the Quamites and all the grandees of the subjugated nations to assemble at this child's



coronation. None certainly ventured to show any disobedience to my commands, and the coronation took place with all possible splendour and magnificence; but I perceived quickly after, from the conduct of my subjects, that their joy was only feigned. My suspicion was at the same time confirmed, in consequence of the publication of several pasquinades by unknown authors, wherein they animadverted, in very piquant terms, upon the improper election that had been made, to the injury of Prince *Timuso*. This circumstance irritated me to such a degree, and caused me withal so much uneasiness, that I resolved at once upon getting this Prince out of the way. I considered it, however, not advisable to put the son of that man publicly to death, to whom I owed all my greatness. I therefore suborned several persons to accuse him of high treason; and as rulers of nations never lack accessaries, when they are desirous of perpetrating crimes, villains enough were soon found, who made oath that the Prince had formed a design of taking away my life. I had him immediately arrested and arraigned at the bar of a competent tribunal, where he was condemned to death by judges whom I had bribed: the sentence, however, was privately carried into execution within the prison-walls, in order to prevent every kind of commotion or tumult.

I had also formed the resolution of having the junior Prince murdered ; but as he was still so young, I deferred for some time the effecting of my purpose. His juvenile years thus for a while obtained for him that security, which my justice did not ensure him. As I had imbrued my hands in the innocent blood of a prince, I now began to reign with so much austerity, and carried my tyranny and barbarity to such a pitch, that I condemned several Qaamites and others to death, whose fidelity seemed doubtful. There was not a day passed without bloodshed. This tended greatly to stir up sedition, and accelerate the rebellion which had already long occupied the minds of the grandees ; the particulars whereof I shall shortly relate.

I acknowledge, that for my tyranny and oppression I deserved all the misfortunes and disasters that afterwards befell me. It would certainly have been more laudable and more becoming in me, as a Christian prince, to have instructed this ignorant and idolatrous people, and taught them the knowledge of the true God, than thus to have stained my hands with the innocent blood of my fellow-creatures. It would have been an easy matter for me to have reformed the whole nation ; for everything that I determined on was immediately and most eagerly adopted ; and when I uttered anything, it was the

same as if the Divinity had spoken. But I forgot my Creator and myself, and only thought of empty and worldly pomp, and of the enlargement of my power :

Fire, and blood, and murder, and frightful shrieks  
Utter'd by men, when hurl'd amid the flames,  
Were my delight ; and which my soul with ecstasy  
Did fill :—even in my dreams,—

Besides, I adopted always measures of the worst kind, and instead of removing the causes of dissatisfaction, I considerably increased them ; which could not be otherwise, for severity will never redress those grievances which are occasioned by injustice. To the warnings and admonitions of my friends I used to reply—

That in order fully to reform the State,  
'Twas necessary I should be severe.—

Consequently one disaster followed another, and my downfall was at last so tremendous, that it will serve as an example, to prove to mankind at large the mutability of human affairs ; and will, at the same time, it is to be hoped, convince all tyrannical and despotic Princes and Rulers of the instability and short duration of every government which acts with violence against the people, and is too rigorous in its punishments.

In proportion as my severity increased, the *Quamites*, as well as my other subjects of the conquered countries, showed themselves more and more indifferent towards me. And on their remarking, that the vices to which I was addicted were very inconsistent, either with a divine origin, a heavenly-minded being, or an Envoy from the Sun, they began more closely to examine into several matters; especially into the motives of my visit, and the deplorable condition I was in on my arrival in these regions. They now perceived, that those extraordinary things which I had performed, ought rather to have been ascribed to the ignorance of themselves, than to my superior skill; particularly on their observing, after they had made considerable proficiency in the arts, that I was frequently in error. The *Kispusians*, a keen and penetrative nation, had more narrowly than any other people watched my actions. They had often observed, that in the edicts I had issued, there were many absurdities, which were evident proofs of my ignorance in affairs of State. In this they were not mistaken: for as my preceptors had never dreamed about thrones and sceptres, I had received an education that was more suitable for a minister of the church than a Prince; and my studies, which had not been extended beyond a system of theology and some few metaphysical terms, were but ill

sued to qualify me for my present post, which was to govern two empires and about twenty kingdoms. The *Martinians* had also remarked, that the men of war, which I had built, were so bad, that they could not be used against any regular fleet; and that the victory I had gained ought solely to be ascribed to the invention of cannon. To these and other satirical remarks they were not backward in giving publicity; taking care at the same time to hint in what manner I arrived off their coast—namely, floating upon the plank of a ship: and that when I was picked up by the inhabitants, I was clothed in rags and tatters, and half dead with hunger and thirst,—a very unlikely condition for an Envoy from the Sun to be found in. Besides, the *Martinians*, who possessed much knowledge regarding the celestial bodies, had disseminated among the *Quamites* certain astronomical axioms, and proved to them that the sun was an inanimate body, placed by the Almighty in the centre of the universe, for the purpose of supplying all creatures with light and heat; and that it consisted of fire, and, consequently, could not be inhabited by any earthly beings.

With such injurious remarks my character was daily aspersed; but their murmuring and inveighing against me were only private, as no one, for fear of my power, durst openly and publicly express

his sentiments. I remained, therefore, ignorant, for a length of time, of the discontent of my subjects having arrived at such a pitch, as that they were inclined to dispute the government with me, until my eyes were opened by a pasquinade. It was written in the Kanaliskan tongue, and bore the title of *The Fortunate Shipwreck*. I have before remarked, that the Kanaliskans were great adepts in pouring forth contumelious and reproachful language, and that their tongues were the only weapons they used in time of war. This lampoon contained all the accusations and impeachments which I had lately made against my innocent subjects, and was written in a most satirical and biting style, after the manner of the Kanaliskans, who are complete masters of the art.

But my pride and arrogance were on that occasion so great, and I trusted so much to my power, that I was unrelenting, and turned a deaf ear to every admonition. The most salutary advice served more to irritate and provoke my ferocious barbarity, than to restrain it. I caused several persons to be arrested, whom I particularly suspected, and endeavoured, by means of the most cruel torture, to extort from them a confession of the author's name. They endured the pain with incredible firmness ; and I effected nothing else, by my unparalleled

inhumanity, than to cause the hatred, which my subjects bore towards me, to be heightened into the most exasperated rage.

As matters stood in a very precarious state, I resolved at once to lay hands upon Prince *Hikoba*, who was still undisposed of. I made this design known to my prime minister, *Kalak*; for in him I placed the greatest confidence. He promised to serve me in everything to the utmost of his power, and went immediately away to execute my orders; but in his heart he abhorred the design, and, therefore, divulged the secret to the Prince. They both repaired to the fort, mustered the garrison, and in a pathetic address represented to them the present situation of affairs. The tears of the unfortunate Prince gave weight to his words: all flew to arms, and vowed they would defend him to the last drop of their blood. The subtle and crafty minister availed himself of this opportunity, let them swear fidelity to the Prince, and exhorted all to take up arms against a tyrant who had formed the abominable design of completely extirpating the whole of the ancient imperial race.

All flew to arms, whose souls abhorr'd, whose hearts  
Detested, the base tyrant of the State:  
They flock'd together—

and confederated themselves with the garrison.

Whilst I was awaiting the return of the prime minister,

Behold ! there hurried past the trembling guard  
A messenger express, who with inflated lungs  
Cried out, with voice as loud as he could bawl,  
Which through the castle ev'rywhere resounded—  
“To arms ! to arms ! our monarch's life is threaten'd !  
An insurrection in the fort has broken out,  
And rebels now are marching for the castle !  
The heights and fields around the city swarm  
With wild, ferocious enemies ! To arms ! to arms !”

*Tomopoloko* advised me to repair immediately to *Tanaqui*. “Come,” said he, “let us collect an army in my fatherland ; and this fury, which causes here so much tumultuous confusion, will soon abate.” I was abashed and confounded, and knew not what course to pursue. Hope and fear seemed alternately to take possession of my soul. At length I followed his advice, and got fortunately away from *Quama*, as the cause of the insurrection was not generally known. When I arrived on the frontiers of *Tanaqui*, I collected together all who were capable of bearing arms. I had very soon an army on foot of forty thousand soldiers, the greatest part of whom were *Tanaquians*. With



these I retraced my steps, hoping that my force would be considerably augmented, when joined by those Quamites whom I looked upon as loyal subjects, and still true to my cause. But in my hopes I was completely deceived; and instead of auxiliary troops, I was met by a herald with a letter from the Prince, wherein he formally declared war against me, as the person, who, by subtle and crafty means, had surreptitiously deprived him of his empire: and he informed me, at the same time, that my wife and son were thrown into prison. Immediately after the departure of the herald, we descried the Quamitish army advancing with the rebellious Prince at their head. As they possessed a vast deal of heavy artillery, I was afraid to hazard a battle, until I had gathered more strength: I therefore remained still, and fortified my camp. But on perceiving that my soldiers deserted secretly and went over to the enemy, and that the hostile army was expecting auxiliaries, I resolved, with the advice of General *Tomopoloko*, to commence the action. It was fought upon the same plain where the Tanaquians, some years before, were completely defeated in a general engagement. The enemy's cannon soon threw our ranks into disorder; and it grieved me sorely, to think that I should be vanquished by my own invention, and with those arms which I myself had made. For some time

my troops resisted every attack, until at length a ball struck the valiant *Tomopoloko*, who died instantaneously; when they immediately turned their backs upon the enemy, and sought refuge in mountain caves and thickset forests. I fled to the top of a high rock, and precipitated myself from it down into a contiguous valley. I sat there for some time bemoaning—but, alas! too late,—my misery and wretchedness, or, rather, my inconsistency and folly. I was so perplexed and confounded, that I forgot entirely to throw away my crown, which was ornamented with sun-beams, and might easily have betrayed me. When I had been sitting in this valley for about the space of half an hour, in the greatest agitation both of body and mind, I at once heard several people climbing up the rock, who were in search of me, and threatening with much noise and vehemence that they would bring me to punishment. I looked around me for a hiding place, in which I might conceal myself; when

A thick and pathless copse, between two barren hills,  
Where reign'd a silent darkness, beckoned me.

Thither I hastened with all speed; and penetrated deeper and deeper into it, between the bushes, until I came at length to a large hole. Here I remained

standing for some time to take breath ; for I was nearly exhausted with running. After a little while I resolved on entering this hole, and therefore laid me down and crept into it on my belly, a good deal in imitation of the wriggling of a snake ; and as I found that it ran a long way, though not very steep, I made up my mind to penetrate to the end of it. But when I had proceeded about the distance of a hundred steps, I fell suddenly headlong down a perpendicular declivity ; and was precipitated with the velocity of lightning, through impenetrable darkness and incessant night, until I perceived at last a faint glimmering of light,

As when Selene shines with languid smile

Through passing clouds.——

As the light gradually increased, the rapidity of my course downwards abated ; so that I, without difficulty, or inconvenience, and, as it were, borne upon the billows of the ocean, was gently conveyed to a place amidst a number of barren rocks ; which, to my utter astonishment, I recognised as the same, whence, some years before, I was precipitated into the subterraneous regions. Why the velocity of my course gradually abated, I, in the beginning, could not conceive : but, after some reflection, I was convinced that the change was occasioned by my coming in contact with the supra-terrestrial

atmosphere, which is heavier than the subterraneous one; for if our atmosphere had not been much weightier than the other, the same kind of thing might have happened to me on my ascension as on my descension, in which case I should, perhaps, have continued my voyage through the air, until I had arrived at the moon. But this hypothesis I leave to the closer examination of persons more skilled than myself in the science of astronomy.

## CHAPTER XVI.

---

THE AUTHOR'S RETURN TO HIS NATIVE COUNTRY, AND END  
OF THE FIFTH MONARCHY.

---

I LAY for a length of time among the rocks in a state of insensibility ; for the fall, together with the wonderful change, by which I, who was lately founder of the fifth monarchy, saw myself on a sudden metamorphosed into a poor and hungry baccalaureus, had completely turned my brain. And indeed the fall was so tremendous, and so poetical, that it was enough to have thrown even the strongest head into the uttermost confusion. I began to ask myself whether all that which I saw were real, or only a dream. When this painful transport had in some degree abated, and I began to recover my reason, the consternation that I was in changed quickly to affliction and remorse.

“ Almighty Father !” I exclaimed, and raised

my trembling hands towards heaven, "what sin, what transgression against thy will, have I committed, to provoke thy anger, that thou now hurlest down upon my head the dreadful thunder of thy vengeance? Where am I? Whence do I come? Whither, whither, O heaven! shall I fly to hide myself from thy wrath?"

Verily! were one to peruse all the annals of all the times, one would not find, either in ancient or modern history, an example of so great a fall; if we except that of *Nebuchadnezzar*, who, from the most potent monarch on earth, was changed into a brute beast. I was forced to experience nearly as hard a fate. In one moment were torn from me <sup>my</sup> too large empires, with almost twenty kingdoms, and I had nothing now remaining but the empty shadow, and a fast fleeting recollection of them. I had lately been a *monarch*: now I could scarcely hope, in my native country, to hold a rank so high as that of schoolmaster. I was called the Envoy from the Sun: now I greatly feared that I might not obtain a situation above that of waiting-man to a dean, or at the highest to a bishop. Hope, honour, prosperity, and victory, had hitherto always attended me: now I saw nothing before my eyes but sorrow, misery, sickness, tears, and lamentations. I resembled much a sun-flower, which

comes quickly to its growth, and as quickly disappears. In short—grief, pain, compunction, shame, agony, and despair, racked my inward soul to that degree, that, like king Saul, I resolved at once,

- - - - upon my sacred word,

To end my troubles with my naked sword;

and was really several times on the point of drawing it for that purpose ; when it entered my mind, that I would again precipitate myself headlong down into the hole, out of which I had just ascended, in order to try whether a second subterraneous voyage might not produce a more fortunate result.

Three times my murd'rous blade I nearly drew,

And thrice I sheath'd again the polish'd steel ;

Three times I to the fatal hole then flew,

And thrice I turn'd again upon my heel ;—

for I recollected that I was a Christian, and therefore abandoned my design, as the Christian religion expressly forbids every one from putting a period to his existence.

I then endeavoured to descend the mountain by a difficult and narrow path, which led directly to *Sandwig* ; but I stumbled several times on the way, as my mind, through troubles and affliction, was entirely absent, and my thoughts were completely

absorbed in reflecting on the fifth monarchy.—These unsubstantial, though still new, images hovered around, and floated in such rapid succession before my imagination, that I was nearly deprived of my senses. I had also really suffered so great a loss, that I conceived nothing in my own country could ever compensate it. What equivalent or compensation, thought I to myself, would it be, were I appointed to the high-bailiwick of *Bergen*? or even, what is still more, to the Lord-lieutenancy of all Norway? What consolation could all this be of to him who was so lately absolute sovereign of so many empires and kingdoms, which he himself had founded? I resolved, however, within myself, that if any Lord-lieutenancy in my father-land were offered to me, I would not altogether refuse it.

When I had got about half way down the mountain, I perceived a number of boys. I beckoned them to come to my assistance, and said, *Jeru pikal salim*; which words in the Quamitish language signify, *show me the way*. They were so alarmed at the sight of a man in a strange dress, with a hat upon his head ornamented with golden glittering sunbeams, that they all set up a most hideous shriek, and fled at once in such haste down the mountain, that they arrived at *Sandvig* a full hour earlier than I, who was obliged to proceed at a slow pace, in



consequence of my feet being blistered and very sore with walking over the sharp pieces of broken rock. They caused the whole town to be overwhelmed with fright and consternation; for they swore solemnly, that they had seen the *Shoemaker of Jerusalem*, or the *Wandering Jew*, rambling about among the rocks: that his head was encircled with sunbeams, and that he was in perpetual motion, and sighing incessantly, which was a sure sign of the old and deep-rooted anguish that still rent his tortured bosom. When the people asked them how they knew that it was the shoemaker of Jerusalem, they answered, that I had told them, with my own lips, both the name of myself and that of my country. I concluded afterwards, that this mistake arose entirely from my words, *Jeru pikal salim*, which they had not understood. The whole town was in commotion, and no one doubted the truth of the account; especially as the story of the wandering shoemaker had lately been revived, which went so far as to say, that he had been seen in *Hamburgh* only a short time before.

On my arrival at *Sandwig*, which was in the afternoon, I perceived that all the inhabitants were assembled in large crowds; for the same innate and eager curiosity, which is peculiar to all mortals, to hear and see anything that is novel, had attracted

them from all parts of the adjacent country. They had been long standing at the foot of the mountain, on the tiptoe of expectation, to receive their new guest; but as soon as they heard me speak, they were all filled with alarm and hastily fled, with the exception of one old man, who seemed more courageous than the rest. To him I addressed myself, and begged of him to afford shelter in his house to a poor wretched and deluded man. He asked me, saying—

Where wast thou born! where is thy home, friend?

From what part of the world dost come, friend?

I answered him,

With fault'ring voice and sighs both loud and deep :—

The hist'ry of my troubles secret I will keep

Until another time and place; but ere I sleep

A tale I will unfold, at which the stones will weep.—

Now conduct me hence, and when in your house, I shall there relate to you adventures that will appear wholly incredible, and which in any history are without parallel. The old man's curiosity was excited; he took me by the hand and led me to his home, quite angry at his countrymen, who, he said, were always so unseasonably filled with alarm, and fled at the sight of every strange face as

though they had really seen something dreadful! As soon as I entered his house, I requested some drink, to quench my excessive thirst. He handed me himself a glass of beer, for neither his wife nor his daughter durst venture to approach me. When I had drunk it, I commenced my story with the following words :—" You behold now before you a man who has long been a feather before the boisterous and changeable winds of fortune, and who has been persecuted by fate more than any other mortal. We are well aware that things of the greatest moment may be changed in an instant; but that which has befallen me exceeds by far all human expectations :—

What I've experienc'd is unheard of, without equal,  
In our time, or days of yore; but hear the sequel—"

My host here interrupted me, observing: " This is a fate to which all wanderers are exposed; for," said he, " how many events and changes may not occur on a journey which endures for upwards of sixteen hundred years?" I was completely at a loss to comprehend his meaning, and therefore begged of him to explain what he understood by these sixteen hundred years. " If we may believe history," answered he, " it is now exactly sixteen hundred years since *Jerusalem* was destroyed; and

I doubt not, venerable sir, of your having been, at the time the destruction took place, already well stricken in years ; for if that which is related of you be true, then you must have been born in the reign of the Emperor *Tiberius*." To this I could make no reply ; for I actually thought his intellects were deranged, and told him, that his words were completely enigmatical to me. But he went immediately and brought a copper-plate print of the temple of Jerusalem, and asked me whether it had really any likeness of the original. In the midst of my sorrow and affliction I was not able to refrain from smiling, and asked him the reason of all this confused and unintelligible language. " I know not," answered he, " whether I be in error or not. The inhabitants of this place aver that you are the *Shoemaker of Jerusalem*, so famed in history, who, since the time of *Christ*, has been wandering about the whole world. But the more I look at you, the more your face brings to my recollection the features of an old friend, who, about twelve years ago, lost his life on the top of this mountain." On hearing these words, the mist vanished from my eyes, and I recognized my old friend *Abelin*, at whose house in *Bergen* I had so frequently visited. I ran into his embrace with outstretched arms, exclaiming, " Is it you, then, my dear *Abelin* ? I can scarcely believe my own eyes. Here you

behold again your friend *Klim*, who is returned from the subterraneous world. I am the same, who twelve years ago was precipitated down into the dark abyss." At this phenomenon he seemed

Like one struck by the fatal bolt,  
Standing in lifeless ecstasy, and staring without sight——

"I behold my dear *Klim*'s face again!" exclaimed he, "I hear his well-known voice!"

So stretch'd he forth his hand, such was his noble air!—

But although I have never seen any one in my life who had a stronger likeness of my friend *Klim*, yet I neither can nor ought to believe my own senses; for now-a-days the dead are not in the habit of rising again: I must have more corroborative proof, before I shall give credit to your words."

In order to remove every doubt from his mind, I recounted to him exactly, and particularized, everything that had formerly taken place between us. When he heard this, his eyes became as it were opened, he fell upon my neck, and shedding a torrent of tears, said: "Now I perceive that it is *Klim* himself, and not his ghost; but tell me where you have lain so long concealed, and whence you

have brought that very strange, nay wonderful, dress." I began then to relate everything circumstantially that had come to pass after my descent into the hole. He listened attentively to all that I recounted, until I came to speak about the planet *Nazar*, and the rational talking trees ; when he lost all patience, and said : " No dream can be more absurd and preposterous, no mad or drunken man's nonsense can be more confused and extravagant, than what you have just related. I would sooner believe, with our simple peasants, that you had fallen among subterraneous elves ; for everything which is told concerning them, seems to me much more probable than your subterraneous travels." I entreated him to have patience only for a little while, until I had brought my story to a conclusion. At length he was silent, and I continued to relate what further had befallen me among the subterranean inhabitants, and how I had founded the greatest monarchy that had ever existed in the world. All this only tended to increase and confirm his suspicion, that I had been among sylphs, who had so fascinated me with their powerful incantations, that I had caught the shadow for the body ; and in order to ascertain the extent of my delirium, he began to question me about the state of the blessed and the damned, the Elysian fields, and such like. As I perceived clearly what he aimed

at, I answered: "Your incredulity is very pardonable; for my recital of past transactions and events must appear to every one as fabulous and invented. That which I have had to encounter is so extraordinary, that it surpasses all human credibility. I swear, however, by all that is holy, that I have not invented or added one syllable; but have related everything candidly and straight forward, just as it came to pass." But his obstinate incredulity remained unshaken; and he requested that I would rest myself for a few days, as he hoped that, through repose, my disordered mind would, in that time, recover its interrupted faculty of ratiocination.

After the lapse of eight days, which I passed in a state of perfect tranquillity, my host conceived that I had had sufficient time to subdue my unaccountable phrenzy, and, therefore, began again to speak about the subterraneous travels; for during these eight days he had not permitted me to mention them. He hoped now, that the fifth monarchy, together with the twenty kingdoms and the two large empires, had so entirely disappeared, that there was not a single vestige of either town or village remaining of them. But when he heard that I repeated my story verbatim, and was equally as circumstantial as before; that I related everything in the same order from the beginning to the

end ; and that I at length upbraided him with his incredulity ; and as I moreover alleged facts which he could not deny—for example, that twelve years ago I was precipitated down into the hole, and that I was now returned to my native country in a completely foreign and unknown garb ;—then he began to show strong symptoms of wavering, and knew not what to reply. He was now confounded, and wished to leave me, but I continued to prove to him, that his belief in elves, fairies, sylphs, and such like, was much more absurd and preposterous than my subterraneous travels : for the first were only fancies, wild reveries, and nursery-fables ; while, on the contrary, many great philosophers had admitted that the earth was hollow, and that there was another, but smaller, globe placed within its shell ; and that my own experience had now fully confirmed this opinion : I could, therefore, not contradict the evidence of my own senses.

At last he yielded to these proofs, and said, “ The firmness which you have exhibited in maintaining that, from which, if invented, you could have derived no advantage, has gained a complete victory over my incredulity.” Being now convinced of the truth, he requested that I would begin the relation of my adventures anew, and recount everything very circumstantially. He was highly



entertained with what I related to him respecting the planet *Nazar*, and especially concerning the principality of *Potu*, whose laws and regulations, he said, ought to serve as a pattern to all republics. He was now fully sensible of it, that the plan for such a well-regulated government could not be engendered and formed in the brain of a man whose intellects were disordered ; for these laws appeared to him to be more divine than human ; and, in order that he might not forget any part of them, he penned everything down as I told it. As I remarked that I had effected a conviction in his mind, I began now to reflect upon my own wretched condition, and asked him what I, under these circumstances, ought to do ; or what fortune and success, after so many great exploits and brilliant achievements in the subterraneous world, he thought I could hope to meet with in my native country. He answered —“ I advise you, by all means, not to let your adventures be known to any soul living. Are you not aware of the spirit of persecution of our priests ? As they excommunicate all those who adopt the opinion that the earth moves and the sun stands still, they would most certainly, were you to mention the subterranean sun and planets, declare you as impious and unworthy of the community of Christians. How maliciously, and with what vindictiveness, would Magister *Rupertus* alone not

persecute you? and how would he not fulminate his anathemas against you? he, who only last year sentenced a man to do public penance, solely because he believed the existence of antipodes? This man, for your doctrine concerning that new world, would most assuredly condemn you to be burnt on a pile of faggots. I advise and warn you, therefore, that you keep your adventures a profound and eternal secret, and that you for some time remain concealed in my house." He then entreated me to lay aside my subterranean dress, and exchange it for another; and all those persons who, out of mere curiosity, came to see the *Shoemaker of Jerusalem*, he sent away, giving out that I had again hastily disappeared. The report of my visit was, notwithstanding, quickly spread over the whole country; and every pulpit resounded with admonitions, warnings, and predictions, of some dreadful and impending calamity, which would shortly follow this manifestation. The Shoemaker of Jerusalem, they said, was come to *Sandwig*, as the herald of God's wrath, to exhort people to repentance. And as reports and stories never lose anything by repetition, this fable very soon received some considerable additions and embellishments. It was related by many, that the said Shoemaker of Jerusalem had announced the end of the world, and threatened, that if mankind did not repent before St. John's day, everything

would be destroyed by fire and brimstone and other combustibles. These predictions caused so great a noise, and had so much effect upon the minds of the people in a certain parish, that the farmers neglected to cultivate their fields, as they, because of the approaching destruction of the world, had no harvest to expect ; but as the parson of this parish, Magister *Niels*, was fearful that he should thereby lose his *tenth* and other little perquisites and comings-in, he published that the last day was deferred for a year, and that they should, therefore, not be scrupulous about returning to their ordinary occupations. As no one, except my landlord and myself, knew what gave rise to these fables, they furnished us with occasion for a good deal of laughter.

As I at last could not remain any longer concealed in a strange house, and must necessarily again appear in public, my landlord gave out that I was a student from *Drontheim*, and a relation of his, and that I was lately come to that part of the country on a visit. He afterwards recommended me so very particularly, both verbally and in writing, to the Bishop of *Bergen*, that his Right-reverence promised me at length the first rectorship that should become vacant. This office I thought was likely to be exactly to my taste, as it

appeared to have some points of resemblance with my former rank ; for a school rectorship is a complete royal government in miniature. The rod of the school is not very unlike a sceptre, and the professor's chair might be aptly compared to a throne. But as there was no place vacant for a length of time, and I stood in need of immediate preferment, I resolved, in order not to die of hunger, to accept of the first situation that offered. Shortly after died, very opportunely, the sexton of Christ-church, and the Bishop appointed me his successor : a ridiculous preferment enough for one who had lately been the ruler over so many empires. Since nothing so much as poverty causes a man to be ridiculed, and as it is foolish to throw away dirty water before one has got clean, I did not refuse this offer : and I now pass away my time in this situation in philosophical tranquillity. Soon after this metamorphosis took place, an honourable marriage was proposed to me with a merchant's daughter of *Bergen*, whose name was *Magdalena*. I liked the young lady very well ; but as it was probable that the Empress of *Quama* was still alive, I feared, that if I married this said *Magdalena*, I should be declared guilty of bigamy. But my friend *Abelin*, into whose bosom I used always to pour forth the troubles and sorrows of my heart, removed quickly every doubt, and proved so fundamentally the

folly of my scrupulosity, that I at length married her.

With this *Magdalena* I lived six years in the most peaceable and affectionate matrimonial state ; but I never related to her my subterraneous adventures. As I could not, however, thoroughly eradicate from my memory the splendour of greatness that once surrounded me, it sometimes manifested itself, and does even still, now and then, manifest itself, in a few individual marks of weakness and acts of folly, which are but ill suited to my present condition. By my wife *Magdalena* I have had three sons, *Christian*, *Jens*, and *Caspar* ; and have, consequently, four in all, if the Prince of *Quama* be still living.



ABELIN'S APPENDIX.

---

NIELS KLIM lived until the year sixteen hundred and ninety-five. His irreproachable life, good conduct, and amiable manners made him beloved and esteemed by all. The priest, however, of Christ-church was sometimes displeased with him, on account of his rigid piety and seriousness, which he ascribed to pride and haughtiness. But I, who was acquainted with this man's adventures, was much surprised to observe the modesty, humility, and patience, with which he, who had been monarch over so many empires and kingdoms, performed the duties of this inferior office. From others, on the contrary, who knew not his wonderful metamorphosis, he could not escape being suspected of arrogance. As long as his strength would permit him, he was in the habit, at certain times of the year, of walking to the top of the mountain, where he would stand and look sted-

fastly down the hole out of which he had ascended. His friends took notice that he used always to retire from it with tears in his eyes, and afterwards lock himself up in his study, that he might indulge in his reflections and meditations for the remainder of the day. His wife also affirmed, that she had often heard him talk in his sleep about armies and fleets, and many other incoherencies. Once his absence of mind was so extraordinary, that he sent orders, commanding the high-bailiff of *Bergen* to attend him immediately. His wife thought that this confusion in his head was created by his too close application to study, and was consequently much alarmed for the state of his health, which she believed was greatly impaired by it. His library consisted chiefly of political books; but as he thought that these were not very suitable for a sexton, he, on that account, got rid of a great many of them. Of these historical travels there is but one single copy, in the author's own hand-writing, and that is in my possession. I have frequently purposed having the work printed and published; but several weighty reasons have always intervened to prevent me from executing my design.

THE END.

---

G. Duckworth, Printer, 76, Fleet Street.

11 IV 1921







2/11-

$\pi^+ A-DD^8, EE^2$  ~~YSLX~~

E-M cells for a few pieces

Raydon 237

2-





